

# Welcome



## iPhone User Guide

Everything you need to know about iPhone



### Get started

Set up a few basic features before you start using your new iPhone.

[Setup basics](#)

# FPO

### Add a personal touch

Your iPhone can reflect your personal style and preferences. Showcase your favorite photos on the Lock Screen, add widgets to the Home Screen, adjust text size, ringtones, and more.

[Make your iPhone your own](#)

Draft



## Take your best shot

Use your iPhone to capture the moment, wherever you are. Learn how to take photos and videos on the fly, and use other camera features on your iPhone.

### [Take great photos and videos](#)



## Stay connected

iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you. Add them to your contacts so you have their information everywhere you need it—then catch up with text messages, phone calls, or FaceTime.

### [Keep in touch with friends and family](#)



Draft

You and your family members can use Family Sharing to share eligible app purchases, your location, and even health data. You can also choose a family member or someone you trust to help you regain access to your iPhone if you forget your passcode.

[Share features with your family](#)



## Simplify your day

Learn how to use the apps on your iPhone to direct you to the places you go most often, pay for your morning coffee, remind you of important tasks, and even lock your front door automatically when you leave home.

[Use iPhone for your daily routines](#)



## Pro tips

Check out these tips from Apple Support advisors to keep your iPhone, and the information you keep on it, safe and secure.

[Expert advice from Apple Support](#)

To explore the iPhone User Guide, click Table of Contents at the top of the page, or enter a word or phrase in the search field.

# Introducing iPhone

# iPhone models

## iPhone models compatible with iOS 26

This guide helps you get started using iPhone and discover all the amazing things it can do with iOS 26, which is compatible with the following models:



[iPhone 11](#)  
[iPhone 11 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 11 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 12 mini](#)  
[iPhone 12](#)  
[iPhone 12 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 12 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 13 mini](#)  
[iPhone 13](#)  
[iPhone 13 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 13 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 14](#)  
[iPhone 14 Plus](#)  
[iPhone 14 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 14 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 15](#)  
[iPhone 15 Plus](#)  
[iPhone 15 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 15 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 16](#)  
[iPhone 16 Plus](#)  
[iPhone 16 Pro](#)  
[iPhone 16 Pro Max](#)  
[iPhone 16e](#)  
[iPhoneX](#)  
[iPhoneXX](#)  
[iPhoneXXX](#)  
[iPhoneXXXX](#)



[iPhone SE \(2nd generation\)](#)  
[iPhone SE \(3rd generation\)](#)

Your features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier. To find out which features are supported in your region, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

**Note:** Apps and services that send or receive data over a cellular network, or that answer incoming calls, may incur additional fees. Contact your carrier for information about your service plan and fees.

## Identify your iPhone model and iOS<sup>Draft</sup> version

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap About.

See [Get information about your iPhone](#).

To determine your iPhone model from the physical details, see the Apple Support article [Identify your iPhone model](#).

## Get iOS updates

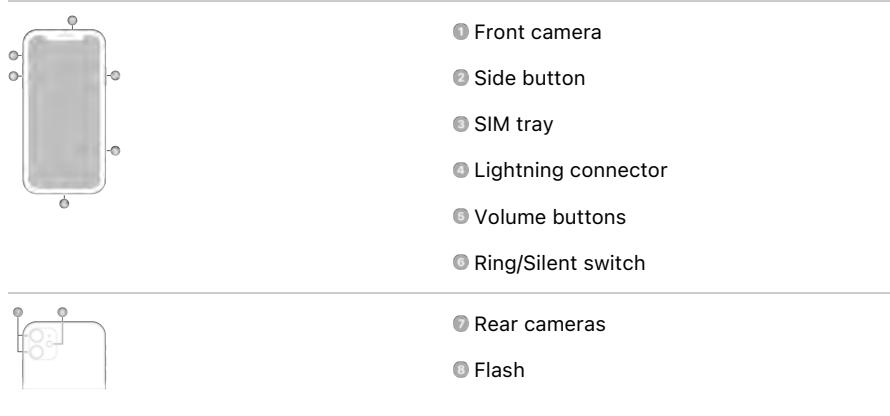
To update your iPhone to the latest iOS software compatible with your model, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Software Update.

See [Update iOS](#).

# iPhone 11

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 11.

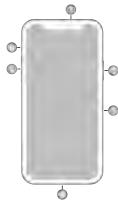


## Get started with iPhone 11

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

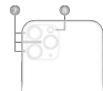
# iPhone 11 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 11 Pro.



Draft

- ① Front camera
- ② Side button
- ③ SIM tray
- ④ Lightning connector
- ⑤ Volume buttons
- ⑥ Ring/Silent switch



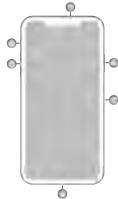
- ⑦ Rear cameras
- ⑧ Flash

## Get started with iPhone 11 Pro

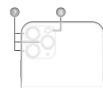
- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 11 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 11 Pro Max.



- ① Front camera
- ② Side button
- ③ SIM tray
- ④ Lightning connector
- ⑤ Volume buttons
- ⑥ Ring/Silent switch



- ⑦ Rear cameras
- ⑧ Flash

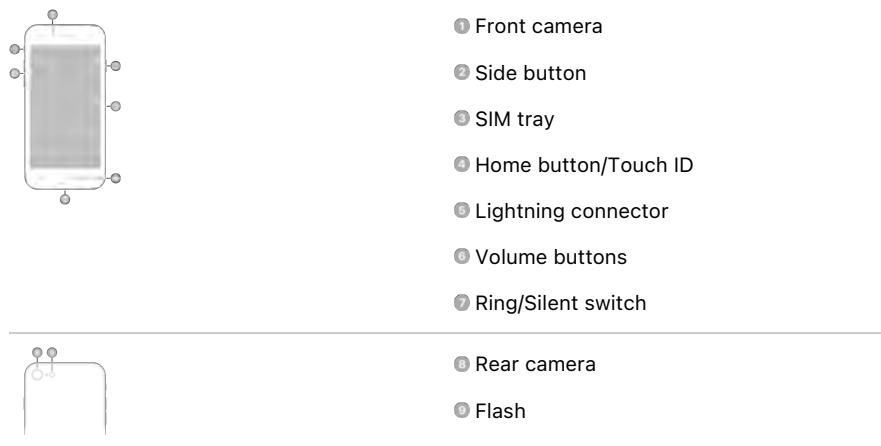
## Get started with iPhone 11 Pro Max

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone SE (2nd generation)

Draft

Draft  
Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone SE (2nd generation).

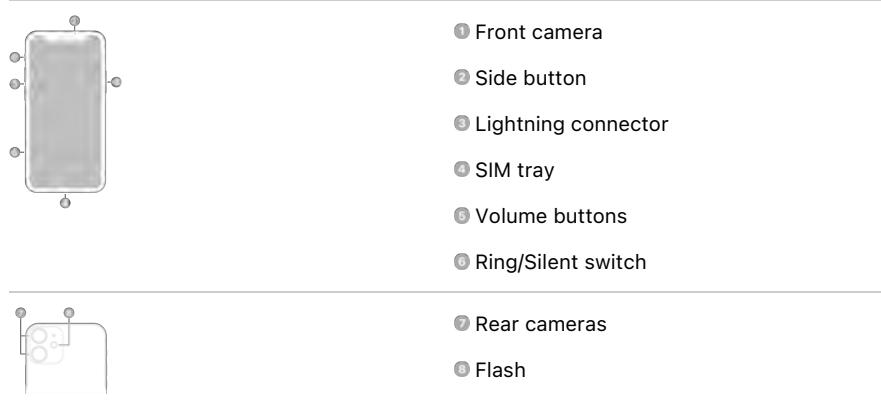


## Get started with iPhone SE

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn basic gestures](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 12 mini

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 12 mini.

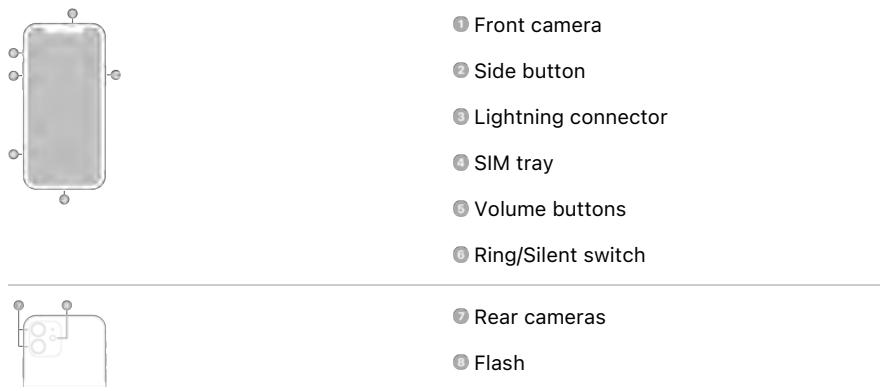


## Get started with iPhone 12 mini

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

# iPhone 12

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 12.

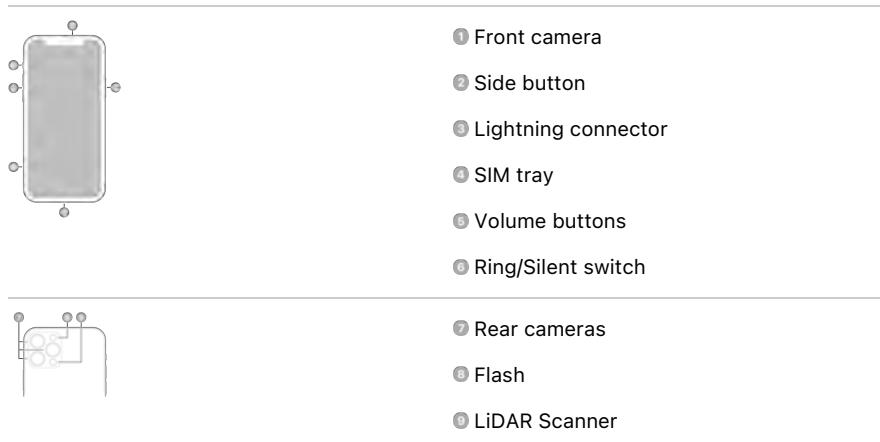


## Get started with iPhone 12

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 15](#)

# iPhone 12 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 12 Pro.



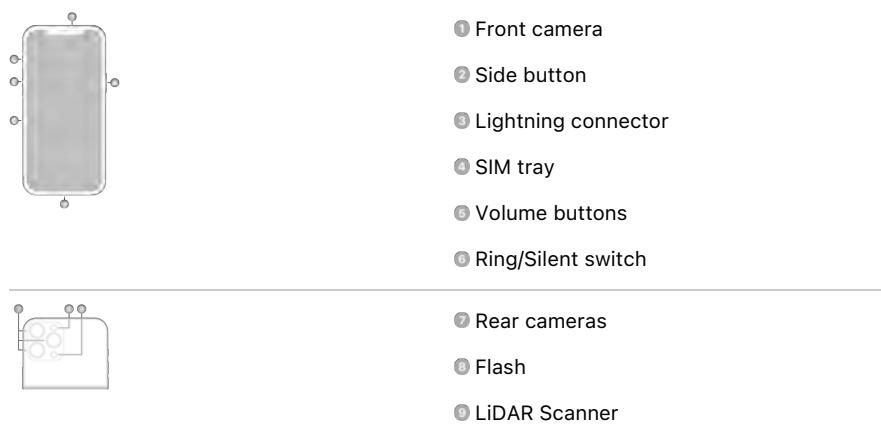
## Get started with iPhone 12 Pro

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)

- MagSafe chargers and battery packs Draft
- What's new in iOS 26

## iPhone 12 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 12 Pro Max.

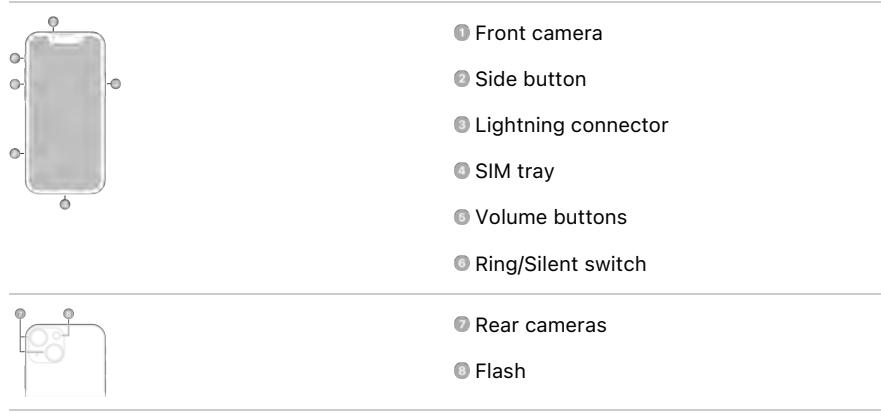


### Get started with iPhone 12 Pro Max

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- Camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs
- What's new in iOS 26

## iPhone 13 mini

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 13 mini.



### Get started with iPhone 13 mini

- Turn on and set up iPhone

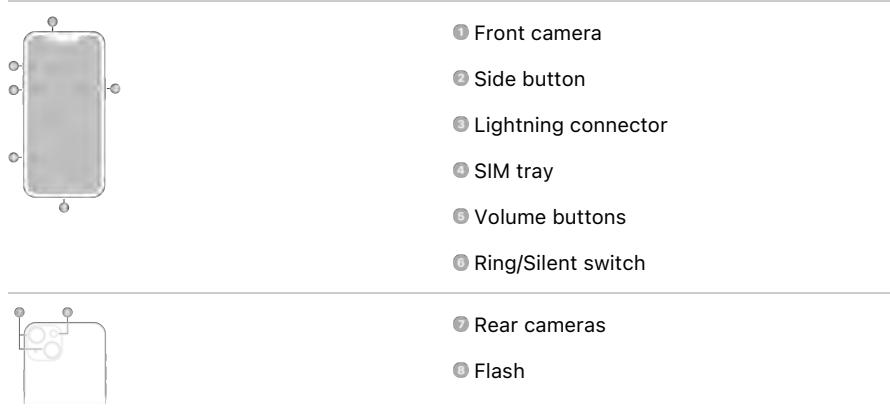
Draft

- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

Draft

## iPhone 13

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 13.

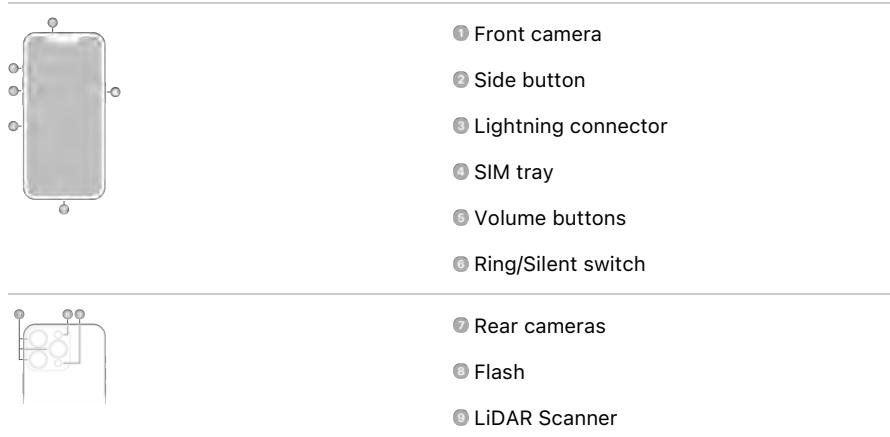


## Get started with iPhone 13

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 13 Pro

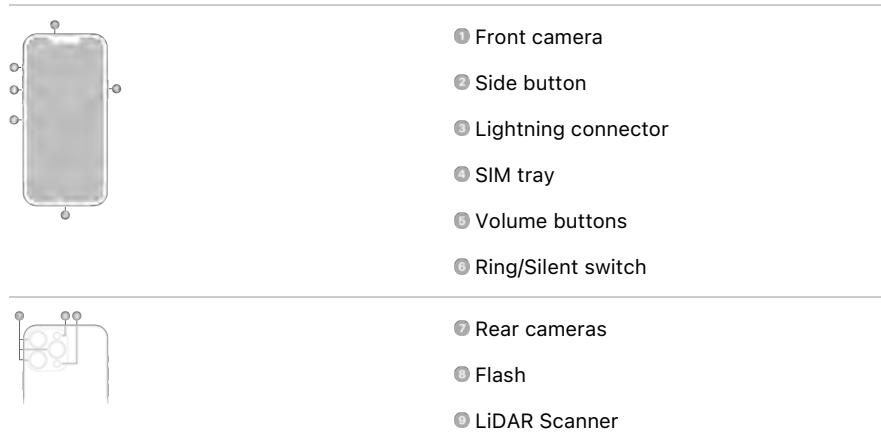
Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 13 Pro.



- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 13 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 13 Pro Max.

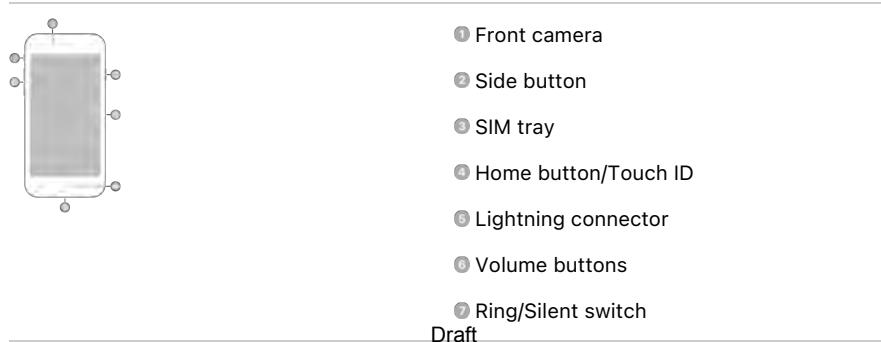


## Get started with iPhone 13 Pro Max

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone SE (3rd generation)

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone SE (3rd generation).





Draft

⑧ Rear camera

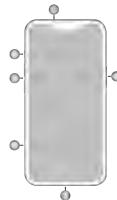
⑨ Flash

## Get started with iPhone SE

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn basic gestures](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 14

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 14.



- ① Front camera
- ② Side button
- ③ Lightning connector
- ④ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
- ⑤ Volume buttons
- ⑥ Ring/Silent switch



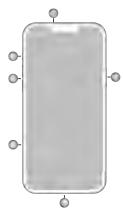
- ⑦ Rear cameras
- ⑧ Flash

## Get started with iPhone 14

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 14 Plus

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 14 Plus.



Draft

- ➊ Front camera
- ➋ Side button
- ➌ Lightning connector
- ➍ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
- ➎ Volume buttons
- ➏ Ring/Silent switch



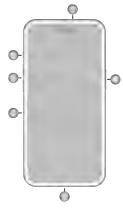
- ➐ Rear cameras
- ➑ Flash

## Get started with iPhone 14 Plus

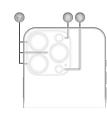
- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

# iPhone 14 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 14 Pro.



- ➊ Front camera
- ➋ Side button
- ➌ Lightning connector
- ➍ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
- ➎ Volume buttons
- ➏ Ring/Silent switch



- ➐ Rear cameras
- ➑ Flash
- ➒ LiDAR Scanner

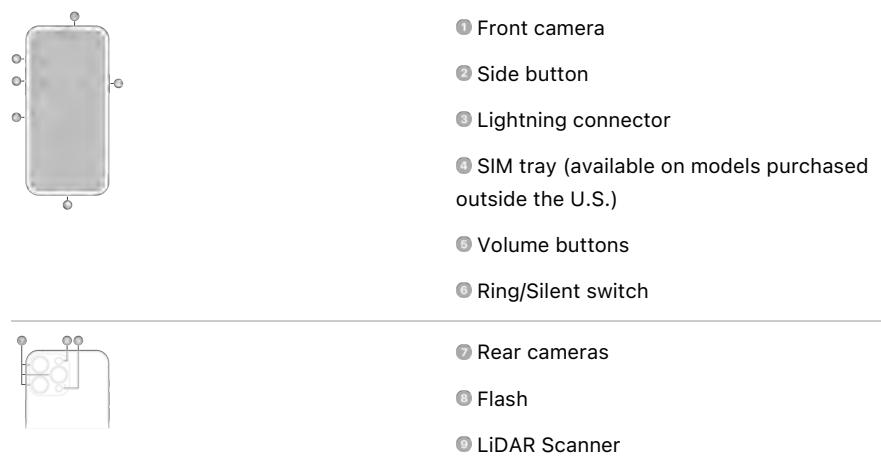
## Get started with iPhone 14 Pro

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)

Draft

## iPhone 14 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 14 Pro Max.

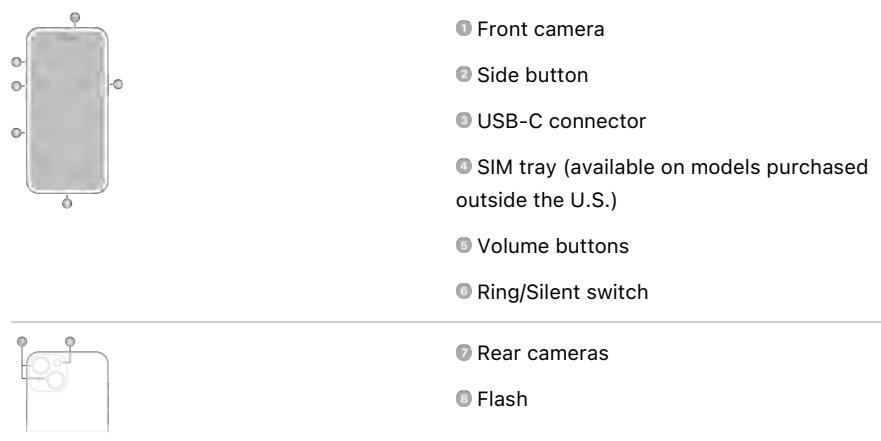


### Get started with iPhone 14 Pro Max

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 15

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15.



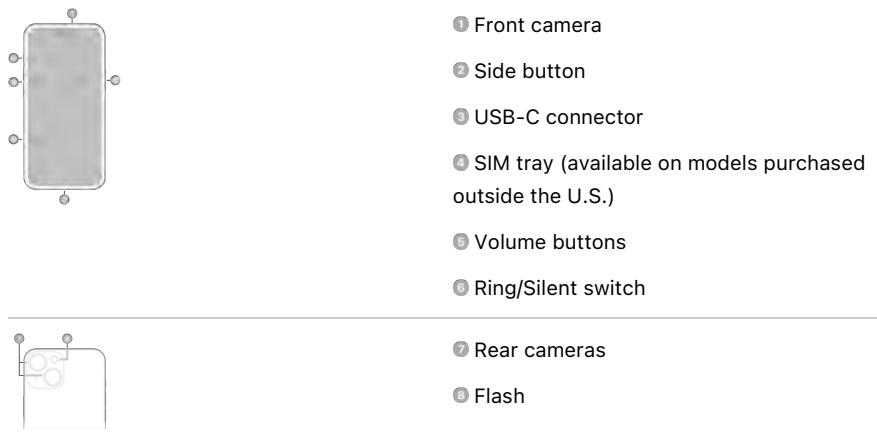
### Get started with iPhone 15

- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- Camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs
- What's new in iOS 26

Draft

## iPhone 15 Plus

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Plus.

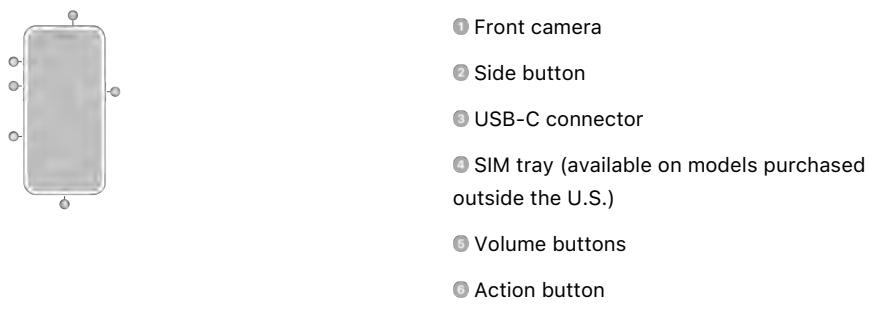


## Get started with iPhone 15 Plus

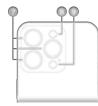
- Turn on and set up iPhone
- Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID
- Camera basics
- MagSafe chargers and battery packs
- What's new in iOS 26

## iPhone 15 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Pro.



Draft



Draft

⑦ Rear cameras

⑧ Flash

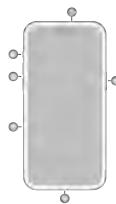
⑨ LiDAR Scanner

## Get started with iPhone 15 Pro

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 15 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 15 Pro Max.



① Front camera

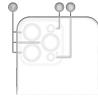
② Side button

③ USB-C connector

④ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)

⑤ Volume buttons

⑥ Action button



⑦ Rear cameras

⑧ Flash

⑨ LiDAR Scanner

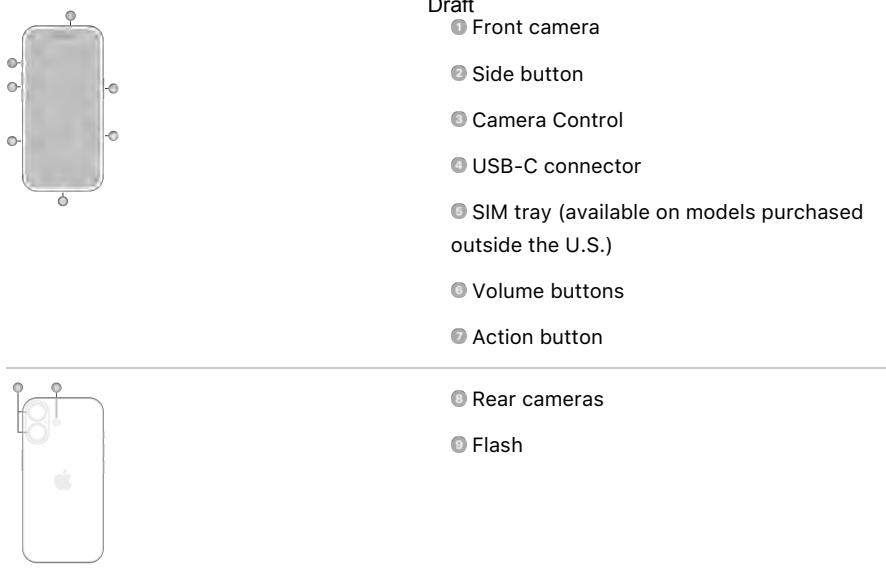
## Get started with iPhone 15 Pro Max

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Camera basics](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 16

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 16.

Draft

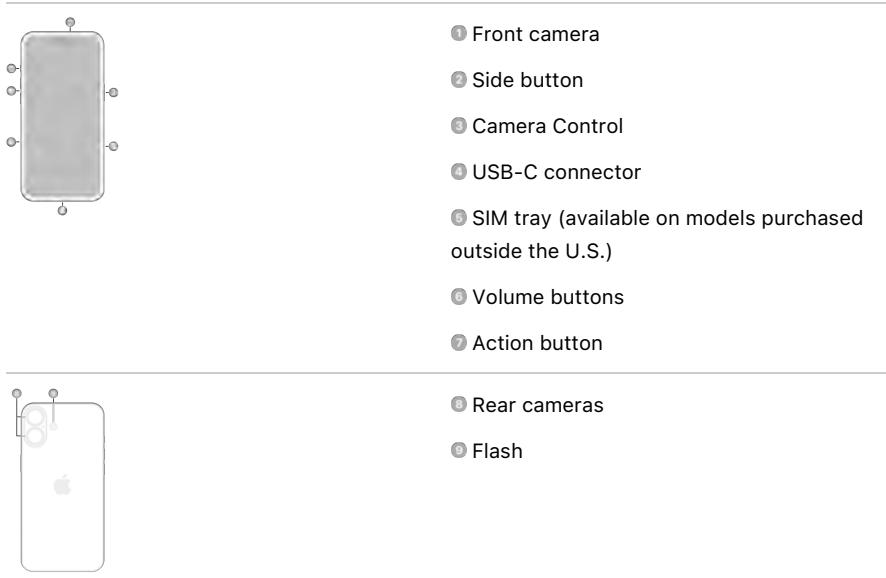


## Get started with iPhone 16

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 16 Plus

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 16 Plus.

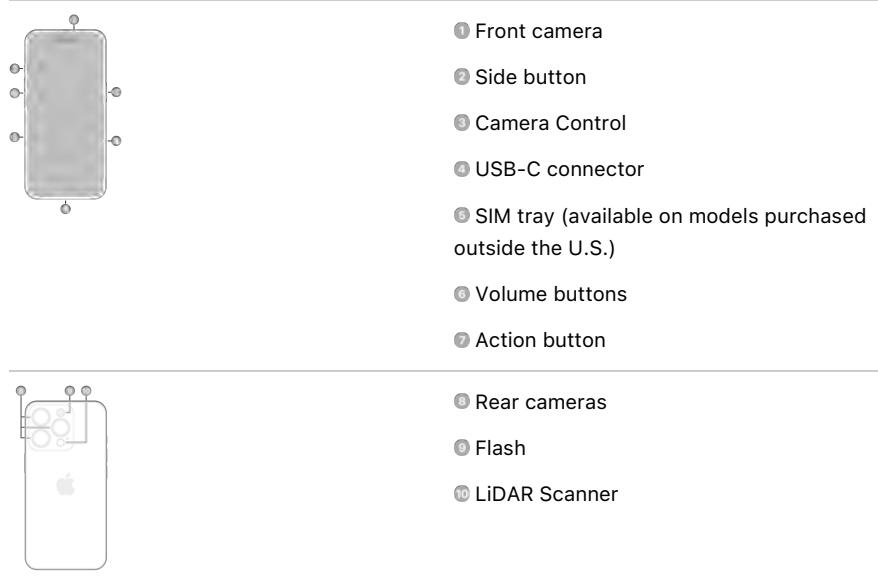


## Get started with iPhone 16 Plus

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#) Draft
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 16 Pro

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 16 Pro.

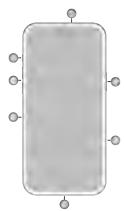


## Get started with iPhone 16 Pro

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 16 Pro Max

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 16 Pro Max.



#### Draft

- ① Front camera
- ② Side button
- ③ Camera Control
- ④ USB-C connector
- ⑤ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
- ⑥ Volume buttons
- ⑦ Action button



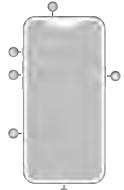
- ⑧ Rear cameras
- ⑨ Flash
- ⑩ LiDAR Scanner

## Get started with iPhone 16 Pro Max

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhone 16e

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhone 16e.



- ① Front camera
- ② Side button
- ③ USB-C connector
- ④ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)
- ⑤ Volume buttons
- ⑥ Action button



- ⑦ Rear camera
- ⑧ Flash

## Get started with iPhone 16e

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)

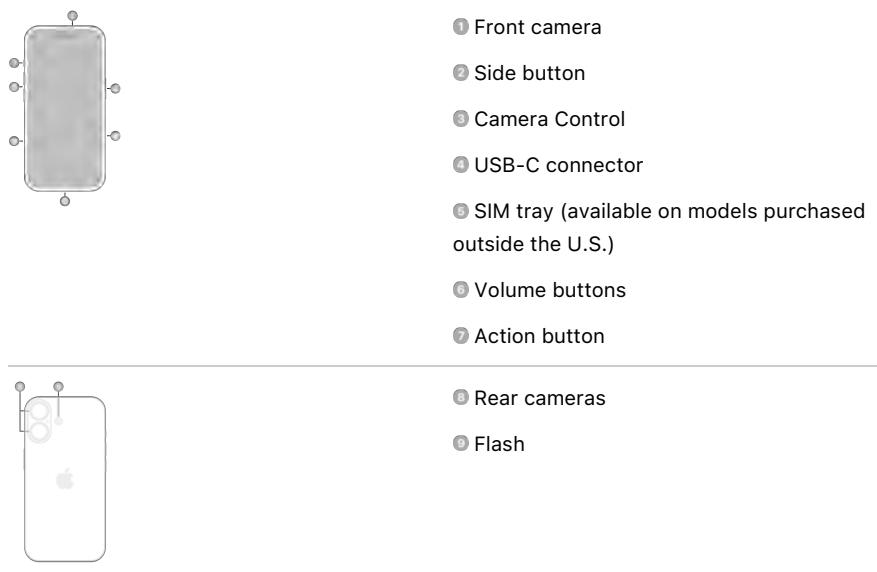
Draft

- [Camera basics](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

Draft

## iPhoneX

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhoneX.

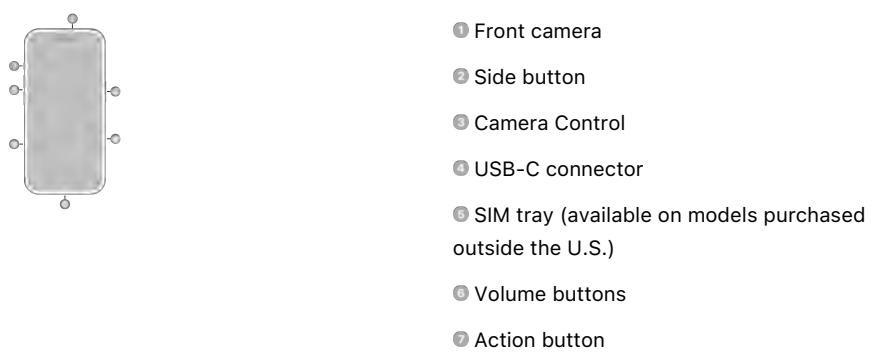


## Get started with iPhoneX

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhoneXX

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhoneXX.



Draft



Draft

⑧ Rear cameras

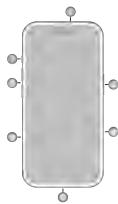
⑨ Flash

## Get started with iPhoneXX

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## iPhoneXXX

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhoneXXX.



① Front camera

② Side button

③ Camera Control

④ USB-C connector

⑤ SIM tray (available on models purchased outside the U.S.)

⑥ Volume buttons

⑦ Action button



⑧ Rear cameras

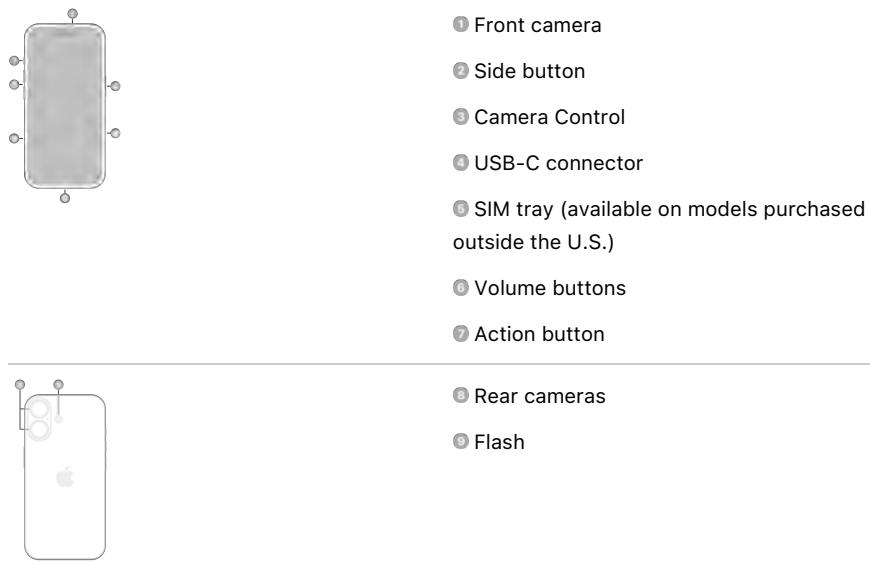
⑨ Flash

## Get started with iPhoneXXX

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

Draft

Learn the location of the cameras, buttons, and other essential hardware features on iPhoneXXXX.



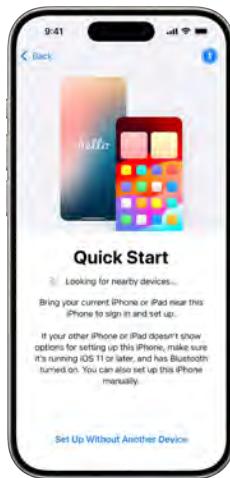
## Get started with iPhoneXXXX

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID](#)
- [Use and customize the Action button](#)
- [Use the Camera Control](#)
- [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#)
- [What's new in iOS 26](#)

## Setup basics

### Setup basics

iPhone has an easy setup process to help you get going when you first turn on your device. Whether you're just getting started or want to make sure you have the basics set up, you're in the right place.



## Transfer your apps and info onto your new iPhone

When you first turn on your iPhone and begin the setup process, you can wirelessly transfer many of your apps, settings, and content from your previous iPhone directly to your new iPhone—just bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions.



## Set up cellular service and connect to Wi-Fi

Depending on your model, use an eSIM from your carrier or install a physical SIM card to connect to your cellular network. To check if your iPhone is connected to your cellular plan, go to **Settings**  > **Cellular**.

To connect your iPhone to your home Wi-Fi network, go to **Settings**  > **Wi-Fi**, turn on **Wi-Fi**, then choose your network. iPhone automatically connects to your Wi-Fi network whenever you're home.



## Sign in to your Apple Account

You use your Apple Account to access Apple services such as the App Store, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

To sign in to your Apple Account, go to **Settings** > **Apple Account**. If you have an iPad (with iPadOS 17 or later) or another iPhone (with iOS 17 or later), you can simply bring your iPhone near your other device. Otherwise, you can manually sign in. To verify that you're signed in, go to **Settings** > **[your name]**; your Apple Account appears below your name.



## Set up Face ID or Touch ID

You can use Face ID (face recognition) or Touch ID (your fingerprint) to securely unlock your iPhone, sign in to many apps, and make purchases. For your security, Face ID and Touch ID data doesn't leave your device and isn't saved anywhere else.

Depending on your iPhone model, do one of the following:

- **Set up Face ID:** Go to **Settings** > **Face ID & Passcode**, tap **Set up Face ID**, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- **Set up Touch ID:** Go to **Settings** > **Touch ID & Passcode**, tap **Add a Fingerprint**, then follow the onscreen instructions.



## Turn on Find My iPhone

You can locate your iPhone if it's ever lost or stolen.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Find My, tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone. You can see the location of your devices in the Find My app . If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate your device using Find My on [iCloud.com](https://www.icloud.com).



## Store your data in iCloud

iCloud helps you keep your important info safe and in sync across your devices. If you replace or lose your iPhone, or it's damaged or stolen, your photos, videos, and more remain secure in iCloud.

To turn on or change the features you want to use with iCloud, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.

Want to learn more?

- [Turn on and set up iPhone](#)
- [Set up cellular service](#)
- [Connect to the internet](#)
- [Set up Face ID](#)
- [Locate a device in Find My](#)

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

## Make your iPhone your own

### Make your iPhone your own

You can tailor your iPhone to your own interests and preferences. Personalize your Lock Screen, customize the appearance of apps on your Home Screen, keep your favorite features like magnifier and remote handy, change the sounds and vibrations for calls and messages, and more.



#### Customize app icons on your Home Screen

You can change the look and feel of app icons on your Home Screen. Choose between light or dark, an all new clear option, or tinted your favorite color.

Touch and hold the background on any Home Screen page until the apps jiggle. Tap Edit, tap Customize, then choose from the different appearance options. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME> to make apps bigger or smaller.



#### Personalize your Lock Screen

Draft  
You can showcase a favorite photo, add Widgets, and change the font and style of the date and time. You can also swap out the controls at the bottom of the Lock Screen for other options—like Timer for when you’re cooking or Translate for when you travel.

To get started, touch and hold the Lock Screen, then tap ⓘ at the bottom of the screen. Browse the gallery of wallpaper options, then tap one to customize its appearance. When you’ve created a Lock Screen that you like, tap Add.



## Set your favorite controls

Many iPhone features—like the timer and flashlight—are just a swipe away in Control Center. To quickly open Control Center on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe down from the top-right edge; on an iPhone with a Home button, swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

To customize the controls, open Control Center, then tap ⓘ. Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen, then swipe up to view the controls gallery. When you see a control you want to add, tap it.



## Add widgets to your Home Screen

Widgets let you easily see the information that’s most important to you, like the current weather and upcoming calendar events. You can also complete tasks—for example, check off an item in your Reminders to-do list, or play a song in Music.

To add a widget, touch and hold the background on any Home Screen page until the apps jiggle, tap Edit, then tap Add Widget.

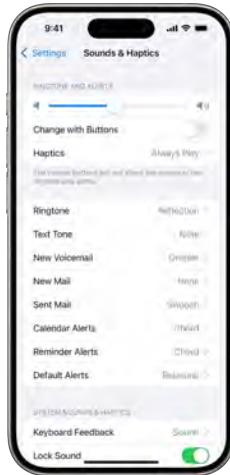
Draft



## Customize your phone calls

Create your own unique call poster to personalize what people see when you call them. Choose your favorite photo or emoji, pair it with your preferred font, then add colors to make it pop. When you make a phone call, your call poster appears on the screen of the person you're calling.

To get started, open the Contacts app 📞, tap your name, then tap Shared Name and Photo.



## Choose sounds and vibrations

iPhone can play different sounds and vibrations for phone calls, text messages, calendar alerts, and other notifications.

Go to Settings 🛡 > Sounds & Haptics. You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people; in the Contacts app 📞, tap a person's name, tap Edit, then tap Ringtone or Text Tone.



## Use built-in accessibility features

iPhone provides many accessibility features to support your vision, mobility, hearing, speech, and cognitive needs. Change text size, make it easier to use the touchscreen, control your iPhone with just your voice, and more.

To customize these settings, go to Settings  > Accessibility.



## Check your privacy settings

iPhone is designed to protect your privacy and information. You can grant or deny apps permission to track your activity across other companies' apps and websites. To deny requests from apps to track your activity, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security, tap Tracking, then turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track.

Want to learn more?

- [Customize apps and widgets on the Home Screen](#)
- [Create a custom Lock Screen](#)
- [Use and customize Control Center](#)
- [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#)
- [Get started with accessibility features](#)
- [Control what you share](#)

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

# Take great photos and videos Draft

## Take great photos and videos

With your iPhone nearby, you'll never miss a chance to take a photo or video, snap a selfie, or capture scenes in low light. After you take photos, use the iPhone editing tools to crop, adjust the light and color, and much more.



### Capture the moment

To quickly open Camera , just swipe left on the Lock Screen. Camera automatically focuses the shot and adjusts the exposure. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo.

On [supported models](#), click the Camera Control to open Camera, then click it again to take a photo.



### Quickly switch to video

You can record videos without switching out of Photo mode. While you're in Photo mode, just touch and hold the Shutter button and Camera begins recording a QuickTake video. Release the button to stop recording.



## Take the perfect selfie

To take a selfie, open Camera , then tap  or  (depending on your model). Hold your iPhone in front of you, then tap the Shutter button or either volume button to take the shot.

On [supported models](#), the selfie frame automatically expands to fit more people in your shot.



## Use camera tools

Camera tools such as the timer, flash button, and exposure control, are just a tap away. Open Camera , tap , then select the tool you need to improve your shot.



## Stabilize video recordings with Action mode

On [supported models](#), Action mode helps you capture smooth hand-held videos even when you're moving around a lot—when jogging or hiking, for example. To turn on Action mode, open Camera , switch to Video mode, tap , then tap .



## Add the final touches

After you take a photo or video, use the editing tools in the Photos app to make it even better. Open a photo or video, tap , then tap the buttons at the bottom of the screen to adjust lighting, add a filter, crop, or rotate. As you make edits, tap the photo to compare your changes to the original.

Want to learn more? Check out the [Camera](#) and [Photos](#) chapters.

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

## Keep in touch with friends and family

### Keep in touch with friends and family

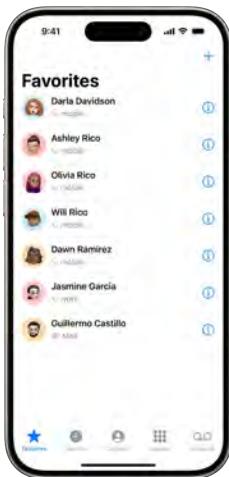
iPhone makes it easy to reach the people important to you—so you can catch up with phone or video calls and quickly text your group of friends.



## A smarter address book

Enter phone numbers, email addresses, birthdays, and more in the Contacts app  once, and you have them everywhere you need them—from Messages to FaceTime to Mail.

Draft  
You can also add contact information from another account (like Google or Yahoo). Go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.



## Choose your favorites

Add the people you talk to frequently to your Favorites list in the Phone app to make them easier to reach.

In the Phone app  tap Favorites, tap , then choose a contact. To call a Favorite, just tap their name.

**Note:** To see Favorites, make sure you're in Classic view. Tap  to switch between Classic and Unified.



## Start a group conversation

You can send messages to a group of people you want to talk to all at the same time, like members of your family.

In the Messages app  tap , type the names of the people you want to send a message to, then send the first message.



Draft

## Make a video call

You can use FaceTime to make video calls with your friends and family.

In the FaceTime app , tap New Call, type the name of the person you want to call, then tap  FaceTime..



## Add people to a FaceTime call

You can add more people to a FaceTime call—friends and family can join at any time. Tap the screen to show the controls, tap , then tap Add People.

Want to learn more?

- [Add and use contact information](#)
- [Use contacts from the Phone app](#)
- [Group conversations](#)
- [Make FaceTime calls](#)
- [Make a Group FaceTime call](#)

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

## Features for your family

Draft

# Share features with your family Draft

There are special features you and your family can use to share purchases, stay connected, and protect your data. If you have children, you can also set up parental controls to manage how your children use their Apple devices.



## Set up Family Sharing

You and your family members can share eligible purchases and subscriptions. Everyone uses their own device and Apple Account, but iCloud storage, subscriptions (to services like Apple Music and Apple Arcade), and other content is shared.

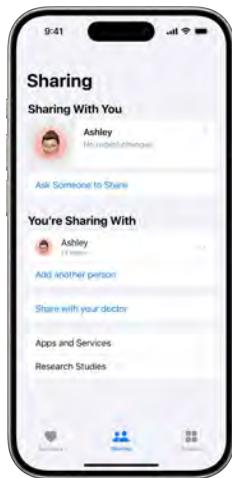
To get started, go to Settings  > [your name] > Family.



## Share your location with Find My

You and your family can share your location with each other and help one another locate missing devices in the Find My app .

To set up location sharing with family members, go to Settings  > [your name] > Family, then tap Location Sharing. Turn on sharing with the family member you want to share your location with. After you share your location with members of your family group, they can also see the location of your devices in Find My.



## Share your health data

You can use the Health app to share your health data—such as your activity, mobility, and health trends—with family members.

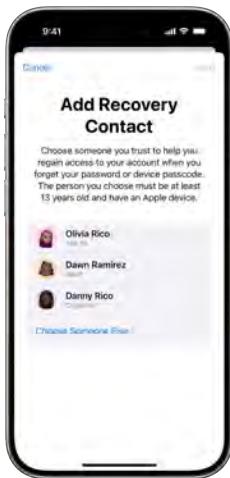
In the Health app 📈, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share with Someone. Data you share with a family member will appear in their Health app, and you can choose for them to receive notifications when there are updates.



## Start a family photo library

You can use iCloud Shared Photo Library to share photos and videos with up to five other family members. Everyone can add, edit, and caption photos, and enjoy the shared photos in their memories, featured photos, and Photos widget.

To get started, go to Settings 🛍 > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, turn on Sync this iPhone, then tap Shared Library.



## Just in case

You can add family members and other trusted people as recovery contacts to help you regain access to your account if you ever get locked out. You can also designate someone as a legacy contact to access the data stored in your account in the event of your death.

To add these contacts, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Recovery Contacts or Legacy Contact.

Want to learn more?

- [Set up Family Sharing](#)
- [Share locations with family and locate lost devices](#)
- [Share your health data](#)
- [Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)
- [Keep your Apple Account secure](#)

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

## Use iPhone for your daily routines

### Use iPhone for your daily routines

While you're going about your day, you can use the apps on your iPhone to get directions, make purchases, and control accessories in your home. You can also silence notifications while you're driving or working, or allow only specific notifications related to what you're focused on.



Start the day with the info you need

While iPhone is charging, you can put it **StandBy** to view useful and timely information at a glance. With StandBy, you can use your iPhone as a bedside clock that displays the time, temperature, and other information you might want to see when you wake up in the morning, or before you go to bed.

To use StandBy, connect iPhone to a charger, stand it on its side (in landscape orientation), then tap the screen.



## Get directions to your favorite places

You can pin locations the Maps app to get directions to places you go frequently, like your home, work, or favorite café, without entering the address every time.

In the Maps app , tap  below Places, then add a location.



## Set up a virtual wallet

Keep your credit cards, transit passes, vaccination cards, and more in the Wallet app on your iPhone. When you add a credit or debit card to Wallet, you can use it to make secure payments in stores and online, and send and receive money from friends and family.

To add your first card, open the Wallet app , tap  at the top of the screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.



## Stay focused

Whether you're driving, working, or just need to step away from your iPhone, you can set up a Focus to temporarily silence notifications that don't match your task—and let other people know you're busy.

Go to **Settings** > **Focus**, then choose the Focus you want to use, or tap **+** at the top of the screen to create your own.



## Reminders when you need them

You can use the Reminders app to make to-do lists for projects around the house and grocery lists that sort items into categories. You can also get a reminder about something when you arrive at a certain location.

To create your first reminder, open the Reminders app , then tap .



## Forgot to turn off the lights?

With the Home app on iPhone, you can securely control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as lights, smart TVs, and thermostats from anywhere. You can also create automations that simplify your normal routines, like automatically turning on your entryway lights when you arrive home at night.

To add your first Works with HomeKit accessory, open the Home app, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap Add Accessory.

Want to learn more?

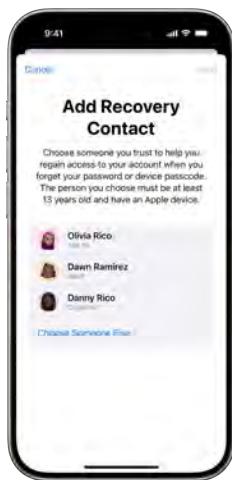
- [Use StandBy](#)
- [Add places and notes to your Places](#)
- [About Apple Wallet](#)
- [Set up a Focus](#)
- [Get started with Reminders](#)
- [Intro to Home](#)

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

## Expert advice from Apple Support

### Expert advice from Apple Support

Apple Support advisors help iPhone customers with all sorts of questions from forgotten passwords to lost photos. Below are a few pieces of advice that Apple Support advisors wish all iPhone owners knew. Follow these simple steps now to keep your iPhone, and the important information you keep on it, safe.



## Just in case you forget

After you set up your iPhone, there are two things you really don't want to forget—your iPhone passcode and your Apple Account information. Your iPhone passcode is the four- or six-digit numerical code that you use to unlock your iPhone. You use your Apple Account to sign in to Apple services, make purchases in the App Store, and more. Your Apple Account is typically your primary email address or phone number and the unique password you create to use with it.

If you think you might forget these things, you can designate a trusted person as your account recovery contact. Your recovery contact doesn't have access to your iPhone or Apple account, but they can give you a code to reset your passcode or access your account if you get locked out. To set up a recovery contact, go to **Settings**  > **[your name]** > **Sign-In & Security** > **Recovery Contacts**, then tap a suggested contact or tap **Choose Someone Else**.



## How to find your iPhone if it's lost or stolen

It's easy to find your iPhone if it ever gets lost—or stolen—as long as you turn on **Find My iPhone** before that happens. First, make sure you're signed in to your Apple Account, then go to **Settings**  > **[your name]** > **Find My** > then turn on **Find My iPhone**.

After you turn on **Find My iPhone**, you can use the **Find My** app on another Apple device to see the location of your iPhone; you can even play a sound on your lost iPhone to help you find it. (Make sure you're signed in to the same Apple Account on the other Apple device.) If you don't have another Apple device, go to [www.icloud.com/find](http://www.icloud.com/find) on any web browser and sign in to the same Apple Account.



## Recover deleted photos or videos

When you delete photos or videos from the Photos app, they're automatically saved in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days. If you accidentally delete a photo or video, you can recover it and restore it to your Photos library.

To recover deleted items, open the Photos app, then tap Collections. Tap the Recently Deleted collection (below Utilities), then tap View Album. Unlock the album using your iPhone passcode, Face ID, or Touch ID. Tap a photo or video, tap Recover, then tap Recover Photo or Recover Video.



## Maximize the life of your iPhone battery

There are a few easy steps you can take to preserve the life of your iPhone battery. First, make sure your iPhone is updated to the latest version of iOS. To check if a software update is available, go to Settings > General > Software Update.

Next, always connect to Wi-Fi when it's available; a Wi-Fi connection uses less battery power than a cellular connection.

Last, turn down your screen brightness: [Open Control Center](#) and slide ⓘ down. To automatically dim your screen based on the surrounding light, go to Settings > Accessibility > Display & Text Size, then turn on Auto-Brightness.

To learn more about your iPhone battery health, go to Settings > Battery.



## If you get a new phone number

The phone number associated with your Apple Account is often used to verify your identity and authenticate that your iPhone is really yours—it's known as your trusted phone number. If you get a new phone number, make sure you update your trusted phone number so you don't lose access to your account if you forget your Apple Account password, or move to a new iPhone.

To update your trusted phone number, go to **Settings** ⓘ > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap Add Email or Phone Number. Tap Phone Number, then enter your new phone number and follow the onscreen instructions to verify your new number.



## All about eSIM

An eSIM is a digital version of the physical SIM card inside your iPhone that connects to your cellular carrier. With eSIM, you don't have to swap out your SIM card when you get a new iPhone, and you can easily connect to new cellular carriers at home or while traveling. If you purchased an iPhone 14 model or later in the United States, your iPhone automatically connects to your cellular carrier using eSIM.

If you erase your iPhone, or restore it from a backup and accidentally delete your eSIM, your iPhone may lose its cellular connection; to restore it, you'll need to contact your cellular provider.

Want to learn more?

- [Keep your Apple Account secure](#)

- [Locate a device](#)
- [Delete or hide photos and videos](#)
- [Check battery health and usage](#)
- [Set up an eSIM](#)

Draft

Not all features are available for all iPhone models.

## What's new

### What's new in iOS 26

Liquid Glass.

Liquid Glass is a system-wide design update with the optical qualities of glass and a sense of fluidity. Liquid Glass reflects and refracts its surroundings and dynamically transforms to help keep your attention on the content onscreen.

Lock Screen.

The time dynamically adapts its position based on the Lock Screen photo and wallpaper and always keeps the subject in view. When you move your iPhone, the Lock Screen photo comes to life with a new 3D effect. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

Home Screen.

App icons on your Home Screen have a new look that you can set to light, dark, or tint with different colors. [Customize apps and widgets on the Home Screen](#).

Apple Intelligence.

Create Genmoji based on an existing emoji or combinations of different emoji and descriptive text. Change the look and expressions of Genmoji and Image Playground creations that are based on people in your photo library. Create custom Backgrounds for your Messages conversations. Live Translation automatically translates texts in Messages, displays live translated captions in FaceTime, and provides spoken translations for calls in the Phone app. Use visual intelligence to learn more about what you're looking at on your iPhone. See [Create your own emoji with Genmoji](#), [Translate messages, calls, and conversations on iPhone](#), and [Interact with what's on your screen](#).

Camera.

A simplified design elevates the two capture modes you use most—Photo and Video. Additional controls are conveniently located together, making it easier to switch camera settings in the moment. See [Switch between camera modes](#).

Phone.

Manage your incoming calls from unknown numbers more efficiently with a call assistant that gathers the necessary information before your phone rings, so you can make an informed decision on whether to pick up, decline, or ask for more information. Use Hold Assist to wait on hold for you and then send you a notification when it's time to return to the call. See [Block or avoid unwanted calls](#) and [Use Hold Assist](#).

Messages.

Draft

Screen messages from new numbers so you're in control of who can reach you. [Draft](#)  
Backgrounds let you personalize conversations with distinct still or dynamic backgrounds that everyone in the conversation can enjoy. In group conversations you can create polls to help make decisions and send money using Apple Cash. See [Screen, block, filter, and report messages](#), [Personalize backgrounds](#), and [Poll people in a conversation](#).

FaceTime.

Manage your incoming calls from unknown numbers more efficiently with a call assistant that gathers the necessary information before your phone rings, so you can make an informed decision on whether to pick up, decline, or ask for more information. See [Screen and filter calls](#).

Photos.

Photos has an updated layout that makes it easy to switch between your photo library and collections. You can reorder collections, collapse collections to view just the ones you want, and resize collections to see more or less displayed onscreen. See [Browse your photo library](#) and [Browse your photo collections](#).

Maps.

Maps learns your preferred routes to places you go often, like work or home. Maps will notify you of conditions on your preferred route, such as traffic delays or road closures, before you head out and offer you an alternate route. Use Visited Places to keep track of where you've been, so you can recall them later and share with friends or family. See [View and manage Visited Places](#).

Games.

A new app where you can keep track of all the games you're playing, discover new ones, receive tailored recommendations, and start challenges with friends. See [Get started with the Apple Games app](#).

Music.

AutoMix seamlessly mixes one song to the next just like a DJ. See [Adjust the sound](#).

Wallet.

Create a passport verified ID in Wallet that can be presented at TSA checkpoints in airports, or in apps or websites that require an age verification. Boarding passes that you save in Wallet can be used to track your bags, share your flight status, view airports maps, and more. See [Add a Passport ID](#) and [Use passes, loyalty cards, tickets, and more](#).

Preview.

The Preview app comes to iPhone so you can easily view, edit, and share PDF documents and images. Scan documents from within Preview, use Autofill in Preview to quickly fill out forms, and export PDFs and images as different file types or sizes. See [Scan text and documents on iPhone](#), [Export or compress PDFs and images on iPhone](#), [Open and view PDFs and images on iPhone](#), and [Fill out and sign PDF forms on iPhone](#).

Accessibility.

Braille Access introduces an all-new experience designed for Braille users with a connected Braille display that enables note taking, document reading, access to Live Captions and more. Vehicle Motion Cues help reduce motion sickness for passengers in moving vehicles. You can also temporarily use your Accessibility settings on someone else's device. See [Take notes in braille with Braille Access on iPhone](#), [Use iPhone more comfortably while riding in a vehicle](#), and [Share your accessibility settings with another device](#).

During device set up, parents can specify if they are setting up a device for an older child, age 13-17, and age appropriate protections are enabled. iPhone can detect if a child is using an adult account and provide a prompt to switch to a child account.

Journal.

Create multiple journals for different aspects of your life. As you write, include drawings inline with text, and then view the location of your journal entries on a map. See [Create a new journal](#), [Add a drawing](#), and [View entries by location](#).

CarPlay.

New design makes CarPlay an easier and safer way to use your iPhone while you drive. Tapbacks in Messages make it easy to quickly respond to messages you receive while driving. Widgets let you keep up with your favorite apps at a glance and Live Activities on the dashboard let you keep track of events in real time. See [React with Tapbacks](#), [Add Widgets in CarPlay](#), and [View Live Activities](#).

Audio recording.

Capture high-quality audio and video during video conference calls. And a new input chooser makes it easy for creators to pick the right microphone for each app. See [Record audio and video](#).

Weather.

Add a Weather widget to your Smart Stack for an upcoming destination. Opt-in to receive severe weather alerts for that location. See [Get weather notifications for an upcoming destination](#).

Clock.

Set a custom snooze time for your daily alarm to match your preferred sleeping habits. See [Set an alarm](#).

Learn tricks for iOS 26.

The Tips app adds new suggestions regularly, so you can get the most from your iPhone. See [Get tips](#).

*Note:* New features and apps may vary depending on your iPhone model, region, language, and carrier.

## Set up and get started

### Turn on and set up iPhone

You can turn on and set up your new iPhone with an internet connection. You can also set up iPhone by connecting it to your computer. If you have another iPhone, an iPad, or an Android device, you can transfer your data to your new iPhone.

*Note:* If your iPhone is deployed or managed by a company or other organization, see an administrator for setup instructions. For general information, see the [Apple at Work website](#).

#### Prepare for setup

To make setup as smooth as possible, have the following items available:

- An internet connection through a Wi-Fi network (you may need the name and password of the network) or cellular data service through a carrier (not required for iPhone 14 and later models)

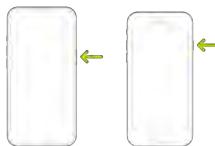
- Your [Apple Account](#) and password. Draft If you don't have an Apple Account, you can create one during setup
- Your credit or debit card account information, if you want to add a card to Apple Pay during setup
- Your previous iPhone or a [backup of your device](#), if you're transferring your data to your new device

**Tip:** If you don't have sufficient storage space to back up your device, iCloud will provide enough storage to complete a temporary backup, free of charge, for up to three weeks from the purchase of your iPhone. On your previous device, go to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset [device]. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- Your Android device, if you're transferring your Android content

## Turn on and set up your iPhone

1. Press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears.



If iPhone doesn't turn on, you might need to [charge the battery](#). For more help, see the Apple Support article [If your iPhone won't turn on or is frozen](#).

**Tip:** If you're blind or have low vision, you can triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models) to turn on VoiceOver, the screen reader. You can also double-tap the screen with three fingers to turn on Zoom. See [Get started with accessibility features](#).

2. Do one of the following:

- *Use Quick Start:* If you have another iPhone or iPad with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

- *Set Up Manually:* If you don't have another device, tap Set Up Without Another Device, then follow the onscreen setup instructions.

## Move from an Android device to iPhone

If you have an Android device, you can transfer your data with the Move to iOS app when you first set up your new iPhone.

**Note:** If you already completed setup and want to use Move to iOS, you must erase your iPhone and start over, or move your data manually. See the Apple Support article [Move content manually from your Android device to your iPhone or iPad](#).

1. On your device with Android version 4.0 or later, see the Apple Support article [Move from Android to iPhone or iPad](#) and download the Move to iOS app.

2. On your iPhone, do the following: Draft
  - Follow the setup assistant.
  - On the Transfer Your Apps & Data screen, tap From Android.
3. On the Android device, do the following:
  - Turn on Wi-Fi.
  - Open the Move to iOS app.
  - Follow the onscreen instructions.

**WARNING:** To avoid injury, read [Important safety information](#) before using iPhone.

## Wake, unlock, and lock iPhone

iPhone turns off the display to save power, locks for security, and goes to sleep when you're not using it. You can quickly wake and unlock iPhone when you want to use it again.

### Wake iPhone

To wake iPhone, do one of the following:

- Press the side button.



- Raise iPhone.



*Note:* To turn off Raise to Wake, go to [Settings](#) > Display & Brightness.

- Tap the screen (not available on iPhone SE).



### Unlock iPhone with Face ID

If you have an [iPhone with Face ID](#), but you didn't turn on Face ID during setup, see [Set up Face ID](#). Then follow these steps:

1. Tap the screen or raise iPhone to wake it, then glance at your iPhone.

The lock icon animates from closed to open to indicate that iPhone is unlocked.

2. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

Draft  
Note: To lock iPhone again, press the side button. iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so. However, if Attention Aware Features is turned on in Settings > Face ID & Passcode, iPhone won't dim or lock as long as it detects attention.

## Unlock iPhone with Touch ID

If you have an iPhone with a Home button, but you didn't turn on Touch ID during setup, see [Set up Touch ID](#). Then follow these steps:

1. To unlock iPhone, press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
2. To lock iPhone again, press the side button.

Note: iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.



## Unlock iPhone with a passcode

If you didn't create a passcode when you set up iPhone, see [Set a passcode](#). Then follow these steps:

1. Swipe up from the bottom of the Lock Screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.

## Lock iPhone

You can lock iPhone using the following methods:

- *Manually:* Press the side button.
- *Automatically:* iPhone locks on its own if you don't interact with it for a certain amount of time. See [Change when iPhone automatically locks](#).

When iPhone locks, the display turns off unless [you've turned on the Always On Display](#).

# Set up cellular service on iPhone

Your iPhone needs a physical SIM or an eSIM to connect to a cellular network. (Not all options are available on all models or in all countries and regions. On iPhone 14 and later models purchased in the U.S., you can only use eSIM.) Contact your carrier to get a SIM and set up cellular service.

## Set up an eSIM

[Supported iPhone models](#) can digitally store an eSIM provided by your carrier. If your carrier supports either eSIM Carrier Activation or eSIM Quick Transfer, you can turn on your iPhone and follow the instructions to activate your eSIM during setup.

If you already completed setup, do the following:

1. Make sure your iPhone is [connected to an available Wi-Fi or cellular network](#). eSIM setup requires an internet connection.

2. Add an eSIM using one of the following methods:

- **eSIM Carrier Activation:** Some carriers can assign a new eSIM directly to your iPhone; contact your carrier to initiate this process. When you receive the “Finish Setting Up Cellular” notification, tap it. Or go to **Settings** > **Cellular**, then tap **Set Up Cellular** or **Add eSIM**.
- **eSIM Quick Transfer:** Some carriers support transferring a phone number from your previous iPhone to your new iPhone without needing to contact them (requires iOS 16 or later on both devices).

On your new iPhone, go to **Settings** > **Cellular**, tap **Set Up Cellular** or **Add eSIM**, then tap **Transfer From Nearby iPhone** or choose a phone number. On your previous iPhone, follow the instructions to confirm the transfer.

**Note:** After your phone number is transferred to your new iPhone, it stops working on your previous iPhone.

- **Scan a QR Code provided by your carrier:** Go to **Settings** > **Cellular**, tap **Set Up Cellular** or **Add eSIM**, then tap **Use QR Code**. (You may need to tap **Other Options** first.) Position iPhone so the QR code appears in the frame, or enter the details manually. You may be asked to enter a confirmation code provided by your carrier.
- **Transfer from a different smartphone:** If your previous phone isn’t an Apple iPhone, contact your carrier to transfer the phone number.
- **Activate service through a participating carrier’s app:** Go to the App Store, download the carrier’s app, then use the app to activate cellular service.

3. To verify the eSIM is activated, go to **Settings** > **Cellular**, then make sure the new line (below eSIMs) is turned on.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article [If you can’t set up an eSIM on your iPhone](#).

## Install a physical SIM

You can get a nano-SIM card from a carrier or move it from your previous iPhone.

**Note:** Physical SIM isn’t supported on iPhone 14 and later models purchased in the U.S.

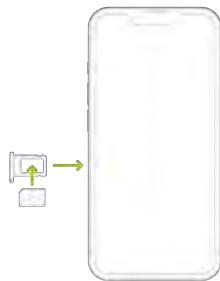
1. Insert a paper clip or SIM eject tool into the small hole of the SIM tray, then push in toward iPhone to eject the tray.



**Note:** The shape and orientation of the SIM tray depend on the iPhone model and your country or region.

2. Remove the tray from iPhone.

3. Place the SIM in the tray. The angled corner <sup>Draft</sup> determines the correct orientation.



4. Insert the tray back into iPhone.
5. If you previously set up a PIN on the SIM, carefully enter the PIN when prompted.

**WARNING:** Never try to guess a SIM PIN. An incorrect guess can permanently lock your SIM, and you won't be able to make phone calls or use cellular data through your carrier until you get a new SIM. See the Apple Support article [Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Convert a physical SIM to an eSIM

If your carrier supports it, you can convert a physical SIM to an eSIM on a [supported iPhone model](#).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Cellular, then tap Set Up Cellular or Add eSIM.
3. Choose the phone number with a physical SIM.
4. Tap Convert to eSIM, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Important:** The availability of cellular capabilities depends on the wireless network, your iPhone model, and your location.

Consider applicable data, voice, and roaming charges when managing your cellular plans, especially when you travel with iPhone. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

Some carriers let you unlock iPhone for use with another carrier (additional fees may apply). Contact your carrier for authorization and setup information. See the Apple Support article [How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier](#).

# View or change cellular data settings on iPhone

You can turn cellular data and roaming on or off, set which apps and services use cellular data, see cellular data usage, and set other cellular data options.

**Note:** For help with cellular network services, voicemail, and billing, contact your wireless service provider.

## How cellular networks handle voice and data

If your iPhone is connected to the internet using a cellular data network, an [icon identifying the cellular network](#) appears in the status bar.

Draft  
You can use internet services while you’re talking on the phone with 5G, LTE, 4G, and 3G service on GSM cellular networks. Other cellular networks don’t support simultaneous voice and data communications unless your iPhone also has a Wi-Fi connection to the internet. Depending on your network connection, you may not be able to receive calls while your iPhone transfers data over the cellular network—when downloading a webpage, for example.

- *GSM networks:* On an EDGE or GPRS connection, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.
- *CDMA networks:* On EV-DO connections, data transfers are paused when you answer incoming calls. On 1xRTT connections, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

Data transfer resumes when you end the call.

To make calls using Wi-Fi, see [Make calls using Wi-Fi](#).

## Manage roaming options and choose other cellular data options

To turn Cellular Data on or off, go to Settings  > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off.

If Cellular Data is off, all data services—including email, web browsing, and notifications—use Wi-Fi only. If Cellular Data is on, carrier charges may apply. For example, using certain features and services that transfer data, such as Siri and Messages, could result in charges to your data plan.

To set options when Cellular Data is on, go to Settings  > Cellular > Cellular Data Options, then do any of the following:

- *Avoid roaming charges:* Turn off Data Roaming. When you’re in a region not covered by your carrier’s network, Data Roaming permits internet access over a cellular data network. When you’re traveling, turn off Data Roaming to avoid roaming charges.
- *Reduce cellular usage:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Low Data Mode. This mode pauses automatic updates and background tasks when iPhone isn’t connected to Wi-Fi.

Depending on your iPhone model, carrier, and region, the following options may be available:

- *Turn Voice Roaming on or off:* (CDMA) Turn Voice Roaming off to avoid charges from using other carrier’s networks. When your carrier’s network isn’t available, iPhone won’t have cellular (data or voice) service.
- *Enable or disable 4G/LTE:* Using 4G or LTE loads internet data faster in some cases but may decrease battery performance. There may be options for turning off 4G/LTE or for selecting Voice & Data (VoLTE) or Data Only.

On iPhone 12 models and later with a 5G data plan, you can do the following:

- *Enable Smart Data mode to optimize battery life:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose 5G Auto. In this mode, your iPhone automatically switches to LTE when 5G speeds don’t provide noticeably better performance.
- *Use higher-quality video and FaceTime HD on 5G networks:* Tap Data Mode, then choose Allow More Data on 5G.
- *Turn off 5G:* Tap Voice & Data, then choose LTE.

To set up a Personal Hotspot to share your Internet connection, see [Share your internet connection](#). Draft

## View how much data you're using

To see how much cellular data you've used, go to Settings > Cellular, then do any of the following:

- See *cellular data usage for individual apps*: Scroll down to your list of apps, then tap Show All. The amount of cellular data used appears below each app. If you don't want an app to use cellular data, you can turn it off for that app. When cellular data is off, apps use only Wi-Fi for data.
- See *cellular data usage for individual system services*: System Services appears above the list of apps in the cellular section. Cellular data can't be turned on or off for individual system services.

You can view the data-usage statistics for an app from a current period, or view data statistics for apps that used data when you were roaming. To reset these statistics, go to Settings > Cellular, scroll to the bottom, then tap Reset Statistics.

If you're using an iPhone with Dual SIM, you can see how much cellular data you've used with your selected cellular data number.

**Note:** To get the most accurate cellular data usage from a current period, contact your carrier.

## Set cellular data usage for apps and services

Go to Settings > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off for any app (such as Maps) or service (such as Wi-Fi Assist) that can use cellular data.

If a setting is off, iPhone uses only Wi-Fi for that service.

**Note:** Wi-Fi Assist is on by default. If Wi-Fi connectivity is poor, Wi-Fi Assist automatically switches to cellular data to boost the signal. Because you stay connected to the internet over cellular when you have a poor Wi-Fi connection, you might use more cellular data, which may incur additional charges depending on your data plan. See the Apple Support article [About Wi-Fi Assist](#).

## Lock your SIM card

If your device uses a SIM card for phone calls or cellular data, you can lock the card with a personal identification number (PIN) to prevent others from using the card. Then, every time you restart your device or remove the SIM card, your card locks automatically, and you're required to enter your PIN. See [Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad](#).

To add an eSIM, see [Set up cellular service](#).

# Use Dual SIM on iPhone

Here are some of the many ways you can use Dual SIM:

- Use one number for business and another number for personal calls.
- Add a local data plan when you travel to another country or region.
- Have separate voice and data plans.

**Note:** To use two different carriers, your iPhone must be unlocked. See the Apple Support article [How to unlock your iPhone for use with a different carrier](#).

You can set up Dual SIM with the following:

Draft

- One physical SIM and one eSIM; Draft supported on iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone XR, iPhone XS, iPhone 11, iPhone 12, iPhone 13, and iPhone 14, and later
- Two eSIMs; supported on iPhone SE (3rd generation), iPhone 13, and later

**Note:** Physical SIM isn't supported on iPhone 14 and later models purchased in the U.S. eSIM isn't available in all countries or regions.

## Set up Dual SIM

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Cellular, then make sure you have at least two lines (below SIMs). To add a line, see [Set up cellular service](#).
3. Turn on two lines—tap a line, then tap Turn On this Line.

You can also change settings such as Cellular Plan Label, Wi-Fi Calling (if available from your carrier), Calls on Other Devices, or SIM PIN. The label appears in Phone, Messages, and Contacts.

4. Choose the default line for cellular data—tap Cellular Data, then tap a line. To use either line depending on coverage and availability, turn on Allow Cellular Data Switching.

You may incur roaming charges if Data Roaming is on and you're outside the country or region covered by the carrier's network.

5. Choose the default line for voice calls—tap Default Voice Line, then tap a line.

When using Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that is in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that is in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

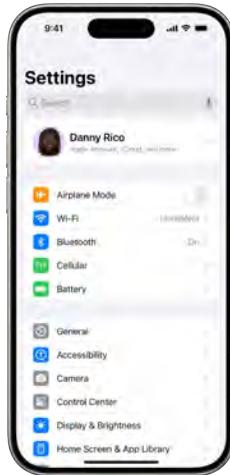
If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

- If you make a phone call from another device, such as your Mac, by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.
- If you start an SMS/MMS Messages conversation using one line, you can't switch the conversation to your other line; you need to delete the conversation and start a new conversation using the other line. Also, you may incur additional charges if you send SMS/MMS attachments on the line that's not selected for cellular data.
- Instant Hotspot and Personal Hotspot use the line selected for cellular data.

## Connect iPhone to the internet

Draft

Connect your iPhone to the internet by **Draft** using an available Wi-Fi or cellular network.



## View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then turn on Wi-Fi.  
iPhone automatically joins known networks.
3. To join a new network, do one of the following:
  - *Join an available network:* Tap the name of the network. If asked, enter the password.
  - *Join a hidden network:* Tap Other, then enter the name of the network, security type, and password.

When iPhone is connected to Wi-Fi, a blue checkmark appears next to the network name, and  appears at the top of the screen.

## Share a Wi-Fi password

If your iPhone is connected to a Wi-Fi network, you can share the Wi-Fi password with another nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

1. Make sure your iPhone is unlocked, connected to the Wi-Fi network, and signed in to your [Apple Account](#).
2. Make sure of the following:
  - The person you're sharing the password with is signed in to their Apple Account on their device.
  - The person is in your contacts list in the Contacts app .
  - The other device is close to your iPhone.
3. On the other device, choose the Wi-Fi network.
4. On your iPhone, wait a few moments for the Wi-Fi Password notification to appear, then tap Share Password.

## Join a Personal Hotspot

If an iPhone or iPad with cellular service is [sharing a Personal Hotspot](#), you can use its cellular connection.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then choose the name of the device sharing the Personal Hotspot.

3. If asked, enter the password. (On the device sharing the Personal Hotspot, the password is shown in Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot.)

## Manage settings for Wi-Fi and hotspots

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi, then do any of the following:
  - *Change the settings for a Wi-Fi network:* Tap .
  - *Join a new Wi-Fi network:* Tap Ask to Join Networks, then choose Off, Notify, or Ask.
  - *Join a personal hotspot when Wi-Fi isn't available:* Tap Auto-Join Hotspot, then choose Never, Ask to Join, or Automatic.

## Connect to a cellular network if Wi-Fi isn't available

Your iPhone automatically connects to your carrier's cellular data network if a Wi-Fi network isn't available. If iPhone doesn't connect, check the following:

1. Verify that your SIM is activated and unlocked. See [Set up cellular service](#).
2. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone, then tap Cellular.
3. Verify that Cellular Data is turned on. If you're [using Dual SIM](#), tap Cellular Data, then verify the selected line. (You can choose only one line for cellular data.)

## How iPhone connects to the internet

iPhone does the following, in order, until a connection is made:

- Tries to connect to the most recently used available Wi-Fi network
- Shows a list of Wi-Fi networks in range and connects to the one you choose
- Connects to your carrier's cellular data network

On an [iPhone that supports 5G](#), iPhone may use your 5G cellular data instead of Wi-Fi. If so, you see [Using 5G Cellular For Internet](#) below the Wi-Fi network's name. To switch back to Wi-Fi, tap  next to the network name, then tap [Use Wi-Fi for Internet](#). See the Apple Support article [Use 5G with your iPhone](#).

*Note:* If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, apps and services may transfer data over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. Contact your carrier for information about your cellular data rates. To manage cellular data usage, see [View or change cellular data settings](#).

## Apple Account and iCloud

### Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

Your Apple Account gives you access to Apple services such as the App Store, the Apple Games app, the iTunes Store, Apple Books, Apple Music, FaceTime, iCloud, iMessage, and more.

When you create a new Apple Account Draft in China mainland or India, you can use your mobile phone number as your Apple Account user name. See the Apple Support article [Create and manage an Apple Account using a phone number instead of an email address](#).

## Sign in to your Apple Account

If you didn't sign in during setup, do the following:

1. Go to [Settings](#).
2. Tap [Apple Account](#).
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Use Another Apple Device*: Bring your other iPhone or iPad (with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or later) nearby, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *Sign in Manually*: Enter your email address or phone number, then enter your password. If you don't have an Apple Account, you can create one.
4. If you protect your account with two-factor authentication, enter the six-digit verification code.

If you forgot your Apple Account password, see the [Reset your password website](#).

## Change your Apple Account settings

1. Go to the [Settings](#) app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then do any of the following:
  - *Update Personal Information*: Update your name, birthdate, and Memoji or photo associated with your Apple Account. You can also set up your preferences for communication from Apple, and see how your data is managed.
  - *Change Sign-In & Security*: Change your Apple Account password, turn on [two-factor authentication](#), add or remove phone numbers and emails you can use to sign in, and [set up Account Recovery or Legacy Contact](#).
  - *Manage Payment & Shipping*: Manage the payment methods affiliated with your Apple Account, and your shipping address for purchases from the Apple Store..
  - *View and manage your subscriptions*: [View and manage your subscriptions](#) from Apple and subscriptions that you purchased in apps from the App Store.
  - [Use iCloud](#).
  - [Manage Family Sharing](#).
  - [Use Find My](#).
  - *Manage Media & Purchases*: Manage the accounts linked to Apple Music, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, and Apple Books and select purchasing settings.
  - [Use Sign in with Apple](#).

## Add or update the payment method associated with your Apple Account

The payment information associated with your Apple Account is used for Apple media purchases and services.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Payment & Shipping. You may need to authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID.
3. Tap Add Payment Method or tap an existing payment method.

See the Apple Support article [If you need to change or update your Apple Account payment method](#).

## Use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud securely stores your photos, videos, documents, backups, and more—and keeps them updated across all your devices—automatically. With iCloud, you can also share photos, calendars, notes, folders, and files with friends and family. iCloud provides you with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can [subscribe to iCloud+](#).

*Note:* Some iCloud features have [minimum system requirements](#). The availability of iCloud and its features varies by country or region.

### Set up iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name].

If you don't see your name, tap Apple Account, then sign in to your Apple Account.

3. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on the apps and features you want to sync with iCloud.

For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your other devices.



For information on how to customize iCloud features on your other devices, see [Set up iCloud and change settings on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

### Ways to use iCloud on iPhone

iCloud can keep your iPhone backed up automatically. See [Back up iPhone](#).

You can also keep the following information stored in iCloud and kept up to date across your iPhone and other Apple devices:

- Photos and videos; see [Back up and sync your photos with iCloud Draft](#)
- Files and documents; see [Set up iCloud Drive](#)
- iCloud Mail
- Contacts, Calendars, Notes, and Reminders
- Data from compatible third-party apps and games
- Messages; see [Set up Messages](#)
- Passwords; see [Use passwords](#)
- Safari bookmarks and open tabs; see [Bookmark a website](#) and [Organize your tabs with Tab Groups](#)
- News, Stocks, and Weather settings
- Home and Health data
- Voice Memos
- Map favorites

You can also do the following:

- Share your photos and videos. See [Create shared albums](#) and [Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).
- Use iCloud Drive to [share folders and documents](#).
- Use Find My to [locate a missing device](#) and [share locations with friends and family](#).

For additional storage and access to iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, and HomeKit Secure Video support, you can [subscribe to iCloud+](#).

You can also access your iCloud data on iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple Vision Pro, Apple TV, Windows devices, and [iCloud.com](#). To learn more about the available features and how they work across all your devices, see the [iCloud User Guide](#).

## Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPhone

iCloud+ gives you [everything iCloud offers](#) plus premium features including iCloud Private Relay, Hide My Email, HomeKit Secure Video support, and all the storage you need for your photos, files, and more.

You can subscribe to iCloud+ or to Apple One, which includes iCloud+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

**Note:** Some iCloud+ features have [minimum system requirements](#). The availability of iCloud+ and its features varies by country or region.

### What's included with iCloud+

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can do the following on iPhone:

- Get 50 GB, 200 GB, 2 TB, 6 TB, or 12 TB (depending on your plan) of storage for photos, files, backups, and more.
- Create unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal inbox with Hide My Email. See [Use Hide My Email in Safari](#) and [Use Hide My Email in Mail](#).

- Browse the web in an even more secure and private way with iCloud Private Relay. See [Protect your web browsing](#).
- Set up home security cameras with HomeKit Secure Video so you can view your footage from anywhere while keeping it private and secure. See [Set up security cameras](#).
- Use a custom email domain to personalize iCloud Mail. See [Set up a custom email domain](#).

To learn more about iCloud+ features and how they work across all your devices, see the [iCloud User Guide](#).

## Upgrade, change, or cancel your iCloud+ subscription

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap Storage, tap Change Storage Plan, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Note:** If you cancel your iCloud+ subscription, you lose access to the additional iCloud storage and iCloud+ features.

## Share iCloud+

You can use [Family Sharing](#) to share iCloud+ with up to five other family members. When your family members accept your invitation to share iCloud+, they have instant access to the additional storage and features.

**Note:** To stop sharing iCloud+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or leave or turn off Family Sharing. See [Add a member to a Family Sharing group](#).

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

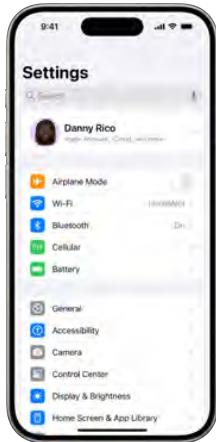
# Find settings on iPhone

In the Settings app , you can search for iPhone settings you want to change, such as your passcode, notification sounds, and more.

1. Tap Settings on the Home Screen (or in [App Library](#)).



2. Tap the search field, enter a term **Draft**, for example—then tap a setting.



**Tip:** You can also [search for settings](#) from the Home Screen or Lock Screen.

## Set up mail, contacts, and calendar accounts on iPhone

In addition to the apps that come with iPhone and that you use with [iCloud](#), iPhone works with Microsoft Exchange and many of the most popular internet-based mail, contacts, and calendar services. You can set up accounts for these services.

### Set up a mail account

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Enter your email address, tap Next, then enter your email account information.

You can also tap "choose from a list" under the email address field to select the email service you want to use—for example, iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Gmail (Google).

If your email service isn't listed, tap Add Other Account, tap Mail Account, then enter your email account information.

See [Add and remove email accounts](#).

### Set up a contacts account

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contact Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:
  - Tap a service—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.
  - Tap Other, tap Add LDAP Account or Add CardDAV Account (if your organization supports it), then enter the server and account information.

## Set up a calendar account

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Choose a provider:* Tap a provider—for example, iCloud or Microsoft Exchange—then enter your account information.
  - *Add a CalDAV, CardDav, or LDAP account:* Tap Add Other Account, choose an option, then enter your server and account information.
  - *Subscribe to iCal (.ics) calendars:* Tap Other, tap Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter the URL of the .ics file to subscribe to; or import an .ics file from Mail.

See [Set up multiple calendars](#).

For information about setting up a Microsoft Exchange account in a corporate environment, see the Apple Support article [Set up Exchange ActiveSync on your iPhone or iPad](#).

If you turn on iCloud Keychain on your iPhone, your accounts stay up to date on all your devices that have iCloud Keychain turned on. See [Use to iCloud Keychain to keep passwords, accounts, and more up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

## Learn the meaning of the iPhone status icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen provide information about iPhone. On an iPhone with Face ID, there are additional status icons at the top of [Control Center](#).

**Note:** If you [turn on a Focus](#), its icon appears in the status bar.

Status icon	What it means
	<b>Wi-Fi.</b> iPhone is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. See <a href="#">View available networks and connect to Wi-Fi</a> .
	<b>Cell signal.</b> The number of bars indicates the signal strength of your cellular service. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears.
	<b>Dual cell signals.</b> On <a href="#">models with Dual SIM</a> , the upper row of bars indicates the signal strength of the line you use for cellular data. The lower row of bars indicates the signal strength of your other line. If there's no signal, "No Service" appears. To see the status icons with their corresponding cellular plan labels and carrier names, <a href="#">open Control Center</a> .

Status icon	Draft What it means
	<p><b>Airplane Mode.</b> Airplane Mode is on—you can't make phone calls, and other wireless functions may be disabled. See <a href="#">Choose settings for travel</a>.</p>
<b>5G</b>	<p><b>5G.</b> Your carrier's 5G network is available, and <a href="#">supported models</a> can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article <a href="#">Use 5G with your iPhone</a>.</p>
<b>5G<sup>U</sup><sub>C</sub></b>	<p><b>5G UC.</b> Your carrier's 5G UC network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. <a href="#">Supported models</a> can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article <a href="#">Use 5G with your iPhone</a>.</p>
<b>5G<sup>+</sup></b>	<p><b>5G+.</b> Your carrier's 5G+ network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. <a href="#">Supported models</a> can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article <a href="#">Use 5G with your iPhone</a>.</p>
<b>5G<sup>U</sup><sub>W</sub></b>	<p><b>5G UW.</b> Your carrier's 5G UW network is available, which can include your carrier's higher frequency version of 5G. <a href="#">Supported models</a> can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See the Apple Support article <a href="#">Use 5G with your iPhone</a>.</p>
<b>5G E</b>	<p><b>5G E.</b> Your carrier's 5G E network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>
<b>LTE</b>	<p><b>LTE.</b> Your carrier's LTE network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>

Status icon	Draft What it means
 4G	<p><b>UMTS.</b> Your carrier's 4G UMTS (GSM) or LTE network (depending on the carrier) is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network (not available in all countries or regions). See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>
 3G	<p><b>UMTS/EV-DO.</b> Your carrier's 3G UMTS (GSM) or EV-DO (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>
 E	<p><b>EDGE.</b> Your carrier's EDGE (GSM) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>
 G	<p><b>GPRS/1xRTT.</b> Your carrier's GPRS (GSM) or 1xRTT (CDMA) network is available, and iPhone can connect to the internet over that network. See <a href="#">View or change cellular data settings</a>.</p>
 SOS ■■■■	<p><b>SOS only.</b> Full service from your cellular provider isn't available, but emergency calls may be possible through other carrier networks (not available in all countries or regions). See <a href="#">Use SOS to contact emergency services</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Satellite features.</b> Emergency SOS, Find My, Roadside Assistance, and Messages via satellite are available in your location (supported on iPhone 14 and later). See <a href="#">Use Emergency SOS via satellite</a>.</p>
 Wi-Fi	<p><b>Wi-Fi calling.</b> iPhone is set up for Wi-Fi calling. iPhone also displays a carrier name next to the icon. See <a href="#">Make calls using Wi-Fi</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Personal Hotspot connection.</b> iPhone is connected to the internet through the Personal Hotspot of another device. See <a href="#">Join a Personal Hotspot</a>.</p>
 VPN	<p><b>VPN.</b> iPhone is connected to a network using VPN.</p>
	<p><b>Navigation.</b> iPhone is providing turn-by-turn directions. See <a href="#">Get driving directions</a>.</p>

Status icon	Draft What it means
	<b>Personal Hotspot.</b> iPhone is providing a Personal Hotspot. See <a href="#">Share your internet connection with Personal Hotspot</a> .
	<b>Phone call.</b> iPhone is on a phone call. See <a href="#">Make phone calls</a> .
	<b>FaceTime.</b> iPhone is on a FaceTime call. See <a href="#">Make FaceTime calls</a> .
	<b>Screen recording.</b> iPhone is recording your screen. See <a href="#">Take a screen recording</a> .
	<b>Camera in use.</b> An app is using your camera. See <a href="#">Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone</a> .
	<b>Microphone in use.</b> An app is using your microphone. See <a href="#">Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPhone</a> .
	<b>Syncing.</b> iPhone is syncing with your computer. See <a href="#">Sync your iPhone with other devices</a> .
	<b>Network activity.</b> Shows that there's network activity. Some third-party apps may also use it to show an active process. See <a href="#">Connect to the internet</a> .
	<b>Call forwarding.</b> Call forwarding is set up. See <a href="#">Set up call forwarding</a> .
	<b>Lock.</b> iPhone is locked. See <a href="#">Wake and unlock iPhone</a> .
	<b>Do Not Disturb.</b> Do Not Disturb is turned on. See <a href="#">Turn on or schedule a Focus</a> .
	<b>Portrait orientation lock.</b> The iPhone screen is locked in portrait orientation. See <a href="#">Change or lock the screen orientation</a> .
	<b>Location services.</b> An app is using Location Services. See <a href="#">Control which apps can use the location of your iPhone</a> .
	<b>Alarm.</b> An alarm is set. See <a href="#">Set an alarm</a> .
	<b>Headphones connected.</b> iPhone is paired with Bluetooth® headphones that are turned on and within Bluetooth range. See <a href="#">Set up and listen to Bluetooth headphones</a> .
	<b>Battery.</b> Shows the iPhone battery level. When the icon is yellow, Low Power Mode is on. See <a href="#">Show the battery percentage</a> .

Status icon	Draft What it means
	<b>Battery charging.</b> The iPhone battery is charging. When the icon is gray, charging is paused. See <a href="#">Charge the battery</a> .
	<b>Bluetooth battery.</b> Shows the battery level of a paired Bluetooth device. See <a href="#">Connect to Bluetooth accessories</a> .
	<b>AirPlay.</b> AirPlay is on. See <a href="#">Stream videos and photos</a> .
	<b>Voice Control.</b> Voice Control is turned on in Settings > Accessibility, and you can <a href="#">use your voice to interact with iPhone</a> .
	<b>TTY.</b> Software RTT / TTY or Hardware TTY is turned on. See <a href="#">Set up and use RTT and TTY</a> .
	<b>CarPlay.</b> iPhone is connected to CarPlay. See <a href="#">Connect to CarPlay</a> .
	<b>Siri Eyes Free.</b> You can ask a question or make a request to Siri in your car. See <a href="#">Use Siri in your car</a> .

## Charge and monitor the battery

### Charge the iPhone battery

iPhone has an internal lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which currently provides the best performance for your device. Compared with traditional battery technology, lithium-ion batteries are lighter, charge faster, last longer, and have a higher power density for more battery life.

To understand how your battery works so you can get the most out of it, see the [Apple Lithium-ion Batteries website](#).

#### About charging the battery



The battery icon in the top-right corner shows the battery level or charging status. When you're syncing or using iPhone, it may take longer to charge the battery.

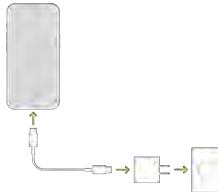
If iPhone is very low on power, it may display an image of a nearly depleted battery, indicating that it needs to charge for up to 10 minutes before you can use it. If iPhone is extremely low on power when you begin charging it, the display may be blank for up to 2 minutes before the low-battery image appears. See the Apple Support article [If your iPhone won't charge](#).

#### Charge the battery

To charge iPhone, do any of the following:

Draft

- Connect iPhone to a power outlet Draft using the charging cable (included) and an Apple USB power adapter or other compatible power adapter (sold separately). See [Power adapters](#).



- Place iPhone face up on MagSafe Charger (connected to Apple 20W USB-C power adapter or other compatible power adapter) or on a Qi-certified charger. (MagSafe Charger, power adapters, and Qi-certified chargers are sold separately.) See [MagSafe chargers and battery packs](#) and [Qi-certified wireless chargers](#).

**Note:** You can also use third-party power adapters and Qi-certified chargers that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. See "Charging" in [Important safety information](#).

- Connect iPhone and your computer with a cable.

Make sure your computer is turned on—if iPhone is connected to a computer that's turned off, the battery may drain instead of charge. Look for  on the battery icon to make sure your iPhone is charging.

**Note:** Don't try to charge your iPhone by connecting it to your keyboard, unless your keyboard has a high-power USB port.

Connecting iPhone to a power outlet or placing it on a wireless charger can start an iCloud backup. See [Back up iPhone](#).

**WARNING:** If you suspect there may be liquid in the charging port of iPhone, don't plug the charging cable into it. For information about exposure to liquid, and other important safety information about the battery and charging iPhone, see [Important safety information](#).

## Improve charging speed

If your iPhone is charging slowly, you'll see a Slow Charger message in Settings  > Battery. This message appears when your iPhone supports fast charging but the connected charger isn't delivering optimal power.

Charging might take longer than expected if you're using:

- A wired charger that provides 7.5 watts or less
- A wireless charger that provides less than 10 watts, such as a Qi-certified charger

## Understand charging behavior

iPhone is designed to manage how it charges to help preserve long-term battery health. Here's what happens when you charge:

- *Fast charging up to 80 percent:* iPhone charges quickly until the battery reaches around 80 percent.
- *Trickle charging after 80%:* Charging slows to reduce battery stress and limit heat. This final stage helps maintain battery lifespan.
- *Heat-based slowdown:* If your iPhone gets too warm while charging—such as in a hot environment—charging may pause or slow above 80% until the battery cools.

These protections happen automatically and don't require any changes to your settings.

## About charge cycles and battery lifespan

Apple lithium-ion batteries work in charge cycles and retain about 80 percent of its original capacity after a high number of charge cycles, depending on the product.

A charge cycle happens when you use a total of 100 percent of your battery's capacity\*, even if it's not all at once. For example, you might use 75 percent of your battery's capacity one day, then recharge it fully overnight. If you use 25 percent the next day, you will have discharged a total of 100%, and the two days will add up to one charge cycle.

**Tip:** Partial charging throughout the day won't harm the battery, and using features like [Optimized Battery Charging](#) or [Charge Limit](#) can help extend its life even further.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article [iPhone Battery and Performance](#).

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

\*A complete charge cycle is normalized between 80 percent and 100 percent of original capacity to account for expected diminishing battery capacity over time.

## Show the iPhone battery percentage

You can view how much charge remains in your iPhone battery in the status bar. You can also add a widget to the Home Screen to monitor the battery levels of your iPhone and connected accessories (including AirPods and other devices).

### See the iPhone battery percentage in the status bar

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then turn on Battery Percentage.

On an iPhone with Face ID, the battery percentage appears inside the battery symbol on the status bar.

**Tip:** On [iPhone models with Face ID](#), you can also swipe down from the top-right corner to quickly view the battery percentage in Control Center.

### Add a Batteries widget to your Lock Screen or Home Screen

See [Add a widget to your Home Screen](#) and [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

## Charge iPhone with cleaner energy sources (U.S. only)

With Clean Energy Charging, iPhone uses a forecast of the carbon emissions in your local energy grid to charge during times of cleaner energy production. iPhone learns from your daily charging routine so it can reach full charge before you need to use it.

### Turn off Clean Energy Charging

Clean Energy Charging is on by default  when you set up your iPhone. To turn off

Clean Energy Charging is only available on iPhone 14 and later. You can turn Clean Energy Charging on or off in the Settings app. To turn Clean Energy Charging on or off, go to Settings > Battery > Clean Energy Charging. If Clean Energy Charging is turned on, the battery icon in the Control Center shows a green outline. If Clean Energy Charging is turned off, the battery icon shows a grey outline.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *On iPhone 14 models or earlier:* Tap Battery, then tap Battery Health & Charging. Turn Clean Energy Charging on or off.
  - *On iPhone 15 models or later:* Tap Battery, then tap Charging. Turn Clean Energy Charging on or off.

## Temporarily override Clean Energy Charging

You can temporarily override Clean Energy Charging if you need to charge your iPhone to full sooner than scheduled.

1. Go to Settings on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Resume Charging.

# Optimize iPhone battery charging

iPhone includes charging features that help extend your battery's lifespan by reducing the time your battery stays fully charged. With Optimized Battery Charging, iPhone slows the rate of charge after 80 percent, then finishes charging closer to when you usually unplug your iPhone. For example, if you typically unplug your iPhone at 7 a.m., charging may pause at 80% overnight and finish just before that time.

## Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *On iPhone 14 models or earlier:* Tap Battery, then tap Battery Health & Charging. Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off.
  - *On iPhone 15 models or later:* Tap Battery, then tap Charging. Turn Optimized Battery Charging on or off.

## Temporarily override Optimized Battery Charging

You can temporarily override Optimized Battery Charging if you need to charge your iPhone to full sooner than scheduled.

1. Go to Settings on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Resume Charging.

If optimized charging doesn't start when expected, see the Apple Support article [About Optimized Battery Charging on your iPhone](#).

# Set a charge limit on iPhone

On supported models, you can set a maximum battery level—like 80 percent—to help reduce battery wear, especially if you charge your iPhone frequently or keep it connected for long periods.

When Charge Limit is on, iPhone stops charging when it reaches your selected percentage. To set a Charge Limit:

Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then tap Charging.
3. Choose the charge percentage that works best for you. You can change or remove the limit anytime.

## Understand Thermally Limited Charging on iPhone

Your iPhone protects its battery by limiting charging in hot or cold conditions.

Charging your iPhone in very hot or cold environments can temporarily affect performance. When your iPhone becomes too warm or too cold, iOS may automatically slow down or pause charging. This helps preserve your battery's long-term health and ensures safe operation.

You might see a message on the Lock Screen such as "Charging On Hold. Charging will resume when iPhone returns to normal temperature."

### What to expect

- If your iPhone gets too warm, charging may slow or stop until the temperature lowers.
- In very cold environments, charging may be slower or temporarily disabled until your device warms up.
- Charging resumes automatically when the battery returns to a safe temperature range.

These protections apply whether you're using a cable, MagSafe Charger, or other wireless chargers.

### Tips to maintain charging performance in extreme temperatures

Help your iPhone charge efficiently with these best practices:

- Charge your iPhone in environments between 32° and 95°F (0° and 35°C).
- Avoid placing your iPhone in direct sunlight or leaving it in hot spaces (like a car on a sunny day).
- If you're in a cold climate, try charging indoors or warming your iPhone gradually before plugging it in.
- Remove your case if your iPhone tends to heat up while charging.

*Note:* These temperature-based protections work automatically and can't be turned off. They are available on iPhone using iOS 16 or later.

## Use Power Mode to reduce power usage on iPhone

iPhone offers power-saving features that help extend battery life based on your needs. Use Adaptive Power to let iPhone automatically adjust performance based on your usage patterns, or turn on Low Power Mode to manually reduce power consumption when your battery gets low.

### Turn Adaptive Power on or off

On iPhone15 Pro or later, Adaptive Power Draft helps extend your iPhone's battery life on days when your usage is higher than usual. It uses on-device intelligence to predict when you'll need extra battery based on your recent usage patterns, then makes subtle adjustments to help your battery last longer.

When enabled, Adaptive Power can lower screen brightness, reduce maximum volume, limit background activity, and cap peak performance to conserve power throughout the day. It can also automatically turn on Low Power Mode when your battery reaches 20 percent.

1. Go to the Settings  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Power mode, then turn Adaptive Power on or off.

## Turn Low Power Mode on or off

Low Power Mode reduces the amount of power that your iPhone uses when the battery gets low. It optimizes performance for essential tasks like making and receiving calls, sending and receiving email and messages, accessing the internet, and more. On [iPhone models with ProMotion display technology](#), Low Power Mode limits the display refresh rate to 60 frames per second.

*Note:* iPhone might perform some tasks more slowly when in Low Power Mode.

To turn Low Power Mode on or off, do any of the following:

- *In Settings on iPhone 14 models or earlier:* Go to the Settings app , then tap Battery. Tap Low Power Mode.
- *In Settings on iPhone 15 models or later:* Go to the Settings app , then tap Battery. Tap Power mode, then tap Low Power Mode.
- *In Control Center:* Add  to [Control Center](#), then tap .

Low Power Mode automatically turns off when iPhone charges to 80 percent or higher.

## Check the iPhone battery health and usage

You can learn how your iPhone usage affects the battery level and view information about your iPhone battery health.

### Check last charged

iPhone shows when the battery was last fully charged and when it was disconnected from the charger. While charging, iPhone displays estimated times to reach 80 percent and 100 percent. To learn more about charging, see [Charge the battery](#).

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone
2. Tap Battery.

### Get insights and suggestions

iPhone may show insights about conditions or usage patterns that affect battery life below the charge card. iPhone may also suggest ways to reduce energy consumption.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone
2. Tap Battery, then tap a suggestion to go to the related setting.

### View daily usage information

Draft

The Daily Usage graph shows your battery level throughout the day, including charging periods, times when Low Power Mode was active, and when the battery was critically low. It also displays the percentage of battery used each day and compares your current battery drain to your average usage by the same time on previous days.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *View the last 24 hours:* Tap Battery.
  - *View the last eight days:* Tap Battery, tap View All Battery Usage, then tap a day.

iPhone displays the following battery usage information:

- *Similar or lower usage:* Shows when your battery use is about the same as usual or less than usual by this time of day (in blue). When usage is similar, iPhone highlights the top three apps contributing to today's usage.
- *Higher usage:* Appears when you've used more battery than usual by this time of day (in orange). Highlights the top three apps that may explain the increase.
- *Screen On and Screen Off:* Shows total activity for the selected time interval, for when the screen was on and when it was off.
- *App and System Activity Usage:* Shows the percentage of battery used by each app or other battery usage and system activity within the selected time range. Tap an app to view more details, including its battery usage and activity for each day.

## Review your iPhone battery health

iPhone displays information about your battery's capacity. On iPhone 15 models or later, you can also see details like battery health, cycle count, manufacture date, and first use date.

1. Go to the Settings  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Battery, then do one of the following:
  - *On iPhone 14 models or earlier:* Tap Battery Health & Charging.
  - *On iPhone 15 models or later:* Tap Battery Health.

Battery life and charge cycles vary with use and settings. To learn how to maximize your battery's performance and lifespan, see the Apple Support article [iPhone Battery and Performance](#).

The iPhone battery should be serviced or recycled by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

# Basics

## Learn gestures for iPhone

### Learn basic gestures to interact with iPhone

Control iPhone and its apps using a few simple gestures—tap, touch and hold, swipe, scroll, and zoom. Draft

Symbol	Gesture
	<b>Tap.</b> Briefly touch an item on the screen with one finger. For example, to open an app, tap its icon on the Home Screen.
	<b>Touch and hold.</b> Press an item on the screen until something happens. For example, if you touch and hold the wallpaper of the Home Screen, the app icons begin to jiggle.
	<b>Swipe.</b> Move one finger across the screen quickly. For example, swipe left on the Home Screen to see more apps.
	<b>Scroll.</b> Move one finger across the screen without lifting. For example, in Photos, you can drag a list up or down to see more. Swipe to scroll quickly; touch the screen to stop scrolling.
	<b>Zoom.</b> Place two fingers on the screen near each other. Spread them apart to zoom in, or move them toward each other to zoom out.  You can also double-tap a photo or webpage to zoom in, and double-tap again to zoom out.  In Maps, double-tap and hold, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out.

## Learn gestures for iPhone models with Face ID

Here's a handy reference to the gestures you use for interacting with an iPhone that has Face ID.

Gesture	Description
	<b>Go Home.</b> Swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen to return to the Home Screen at any time. See <a href="#">Open apps</a> .
	<b>Quickly access controls.</b> Swipe down from the top-right corner to open Control Center; touch and hold a control to reveal more options. To add or remove controls, go to Settings > Control Center. See <a href="#">Use and customize Control Center</a> .

Gesture	Draft Description
	<p><b>Open the App Switcher.</b> Swipe up from the bottom edge, pause in the center of the screen, then lift your finger. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use. See <a href="#">Switch between open apps</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Switch between open apps.</b> Swipe right or left along the bottom edge of the screen to quickly switch between open apps. See <a href="#">Switch between open apps</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Use Siri.</b> Just say "Siri" or "Hey Siri." Or press and hold the side button while you ask a question or make a request. See <a href="#">Learn how to use Siri</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Use Apple Pay.</b> Double-click the side button to display your default card for <a href="#">Apple Pay</a>, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID. See <a href="#">Use Apple Pay for contactless payments</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Use Accessibility Shortcut.</b> Triple-click the side button. See <a href="#">Quickly turn accessibility features on or off</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Take a screenshot.</b> Simultaneously press and quickly release the side button and volume up button. See <a href="#">Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India).</b> Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons. See <a href="#">Quickly call emergency services (all countries or regions except India)</a>.</p>
	<p><b>Use Emergency SOS (in India).</b> Quickly press the side button 3 times until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends.</p> <p>If you've turned on Accessibility Shortcut, simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear and the countdown on Emergency SOS ends, then release the buttons.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Quickly call emergency services (India)</a>.</p>

Gesture	Draft Description
	<b>Turn off.</b> Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider to power off. Or go to Settings > General > Shut Down. See <a href="#">Turn off iPhone</a> .
	<b>Force restart.</b> Press and release the volume up button, press and release the volume down button, then press and hold the side button until the Apple logo appears. See <a href="#">Force restart iPhone</a> .

## Adjust the volume on iPhone

Adjust the volume of media, alerts, and sound effects using the volume buttons, Siri, or Control Center.

### Use the volume buttons or Siri to adjust volume

When you're on a call or listening to songs, movies, or other media on iPhone, you can use the buttons on the side of your device to adjust the audio volume. Otherwise, the buttons control the volume for the ringer, alerts, and other sound effects, unless the ringer and alert volumes are [locked in Settings](#).

You can also use Siri to turn the volume up or down.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Turn up the volume." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

**WARNING:** For information about avoiding hearing loss, see [Important safety information](#).



### Lock the ringer and alert volumes in Settings

1. Go to [Settings](#), then tap [Sounds & Haptics](#).
2. Turn off [Change with Buttons](#).

### Adjust the volume in Control Center

When iPhone is locked or when you're using an app, you can adjust the volume in Control Center.

[Open Control Center](#), then drag .

### Reduce loud headphone sounds

You can limit the maximum volume of sound that plays through headphones on your iPhone.

1. Go to the [Settings](#) app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Sounds & Haptics](#), then tap [Headphone Safety](#).
3. Turn on [Reduce Loud Audio](#), then drag the slider to specify the maximum volume.

Draft  
Note: If you [set up Screen Time for a family member](#), you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Audio level. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Reduce Loud Audio, then select Don't Allow.

## Limit the speaker volume

You can limit the maximum volume of sound that plays through your iPhone's built-in speaker.

1. Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics > Volume Limit.
2. Turn on Limit Maximum Volume, then drag the slider to specify the maximum volume.

Draft  
Note: If you [set up Screen Time for a family member](#), you can prevent them from changing the Speaker Volume Limit level. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Speaker Volume Limit, then select Don't Allow.

# Turn the iPhone flashlight on or off

You can use the flashlight on iPhone to light your way in the dark or get a more detailed look at something.

## Use Siri to turn the flashlight on or off

You can use Siri to turn the flashlight on or off.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Siri, turn on the flashlight." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Use Control Center to turn the flashlight on or off

1. [Open Control Center](#).
2. Tap  to turn the flashlight on; tap it again to turn it off.

Draft  
Note: If you don't see  in Control Center, you can add it. See [Customize controls](#).

## Turn on the flashlight from the Lock Screen

If your iPhone has  on the Lock Screen, you can press it to turn the flashlight on or off.

## Turn the flashlight on or off with the Action button

If your iPhone has an [Action button](#), you can customize it to turn the flashlight on or off. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).

## Change the brightness of the flashlight

After you turn on the flashlight, an image of the flashlight appears on the screen. You can change the brightness by dragging  up or down on the flashlight image.

# Silence iPhone

With the push of a button or flip of a switch, you can quickly silence your iPhone.

## Turn Silent mode on or off

When Silent mode is on, iPhone doesn't ring or play alerts or other sound effects

Draft

(but iPhone may still vibrate). When Silent mode is off, iPhone plays all sounds.

- On [models with an Action button](#): Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics, then turn Silent mode on or off.  
You can also configure the Action button to turn Silent mode on or off, in addition to other functions. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).
- On other models: Flip the Ring/Silent switch toward the back of your iPhone to turn Silent mode on. Flip it toward the front to turn Silent mode off.

**Important:** Clock alarms, audio apps such as Music, and many games play sounds through the built-in speaker, even when Silent mode is on. In some countries or regions, the sound effects for Camera, Voice Memos, and Emergency Alerts are played, even when the Ring/Silent switch is set to silent.

## Silence iPhone by turning on Do Not Disturb

You can temporarily silence calls, alerts, and notifications by turning on Do Not Disturb.

1. [Open Control Center](#).
2. Tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb.

When Do Not Disturb is turned on, you won't hear ringtones or text tones for incoming calls, texts, or notifications. Also  appears in the [status bar](#) at the top of the screen.

See [Turn on or schedule a Focus](#).

# Use your apps

## Open apps on iPhone

You can quickly open apps from one of your Home Screen pages (like the one shown below) or your [App Library](#).



1. To go to the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).  
`<__ isListItem="ol" class="Video __ OL-1" href="Art/V0001_GoHome-1V_UG.mp4" level="1">__`
2. Swipe left to browse apps on other Home Screen pages.

3. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to see App Library, where your apps are organized by category.
4. To open an app, tap its icon.
5. To return to App Library, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

## Find and use your apps in App Library on iPhone

App Library shows your apps organized into categories, such as Social, Entertainment, and Productivity & Finance. The apps you use most are near the top of the screen and at the top level of their categories, so you can easily locate and open them.



*Note:* The apps in App Library are organized in categories intelligently, based on how you use your apps. You can add apps in App Library to the Home Screen, but you can't move them to another category in App Library.

### Find and open an app in App Library

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#), then swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to get to App Library.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the app you're looking for. Or scroll up and down to browse the alphabetical list.
3. To open an app, tap it.

If a category has a few small app icons, you can tap them to expand the category and see all the apps in it.

### Hide and show Home Screen pages

Because you can find all of your apps in App Library, you might not need as many Home Screen pages for apps. You can hide some Home Screen pages, which brings App Library closer to your first Home Screen page. (When you want to see the hidden pages again, you can show them.)

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#), then touch and hold the Home Screen wallpaper until the app icons begin to jiggle.

## 2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the Screen.

Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

### 3. To hide pages, tap to remove the checkmarks.

To show hidden pages, tap to add the checkmarks.

### 4. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models).

With the extra Home Screen pages hidden, you can go from the first page of the Home Screen to App Library (and back) with only one or two swipes.

*Note:* When Home Screen pages are hidden, new apps you download from the App Store may be added to App Library instead of the Home Screen.

## Reorder Home Screen pages

If you have multiple Home Screen pages, you can change their order. For example, you can gather together your favorite apps on one Home Screen page, and then make that your first Home Screen page.

### 1. [Go to the Home Screen](#), then touch and hold the Home Screen wallpaper until the app icons begin to jiggle.

### 2. Tap the dots at the bottom of the screen.

Thumbnail images of your Home Screen pages appear with checkmarks below them.

### 3. To move each Home Screen page, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new position.

### 4. Tap Done twice (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button twice (on other iPhone models).

## Change where new apps get downloaded

When you download new apps from the App Store, you can add them to the Home Screen and App Library, or to App Library only.

### 1. Go to [Settings](#) > Home Screen & App Library.

### 2. Choose Add to Home Screen or App Library Only.

*Note:* To allow app notification badges to appear on apps in App Library, turn on Show in App Library.

## Move an app from App Library to the Home Screen

If you download an app to App Library, you can easily move it to the Home Screen.

### 1. [Go to App Library](#).

### 2. Touch and hold the app until the app icons begin to jiggle and the app moves to the Home Screen, then lift your finger.

## Switch between open apps on iPhone

You can quickly switch from one open app to another on your iPhone. When you switch back, you can pick up right where you left off.

1. To see all your open apps, do one of the following:
  - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, pause in the center of the screen, then lift your finger.
  - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
2. To browse the open apps, swipe right, then tap the app you want to use.



### Switch between open apps

To quickly switch between open apps on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe right along the bottom edge of the screen.

## Quit and reopen an app on iPhone

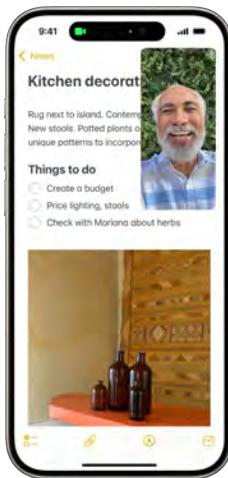
If an app isn't responding, you can quit it and then reopen it to try and resolve the issue. (Typically, there's no reason to quit an app; quitting it doesn't save battery power, for example.)

1. To quit the app, [open the App Switcher](#), swipe right to find the app, then swipe up on the app.
2. To reopen the app, [go to the Home Screen](#) (or [App Library](#)), then tap the app.

If quitting and reopening the app doesn't resolve the issue, try restarting iPhone.

## Multitask with Picture in Picture on iPhone

With Picture in Picture, you can watch a video or use FaceTime while you use other apps.



While watching a video, tap  in the video window.

The video window scales down to a corner of your screen so you can see the Home Screen and open other apps. With the video window showing, you can do any of the following:

- *Resize the video window:* To make the small video window larger, pinch open. To shrink it again, pinch closed.
- *Show and hide controls:* Tap the video window.
- *Move the video window:* Drag it to a different corner of the screen.
- *Hide the video window:* Drag it off the left or right edge of the screen.
- *Close the video window:* Tap .
- *Return to a full video screen:* Tap  in the small video window.

## Access features from the iPhone Lock Screen

The Lock Screen appears when you turn on or wake iPhone. From the Lock Screen, you can see notifications, open Camera and Control Center, get information from your favorite apps at a glance, control media playback, and more.

You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).



## Access features and information from the Lock Screen

You can quickly access useful features and information from the Lock Screen, even while iPhone is locked.

Go to the Lock Screen, then do any of the following:

- *Open Camera:* Swipe left. On [supported models](#), you can touch and hold  then lift your finger. (See [Camera basics](#).)
- *Open Control Center:* Swipe down from the top-right corner (on an iPhone with Face ID) or swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen (on other iPhone models). (See [Use and customize Control Center](#).)
- *See earlier notifications:* Swipe up from the center. (See [View and respond to notifications](#).)
- *View more widgets:* Swipe right. (See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).) You can interact with widgets on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen to perform tasks—for example, tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, or tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode.
- *Control media playback:* Use the playback controls (Now Playing) on the Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward media playing on your iPhone. (See [View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen](#).)

To choose what you can access from the Lock Screen, see [Turn on Lock Screen features](#).

## Show notification previews on the Lock Screen

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > [Notifications](#).
2. Tap [Show Previews](#), then tap [Always](#).
3. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:
  - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap [Count](#).
  - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap [Stack](#).
  - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap [List](#).

You can pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

Notification previews can include text from Messages, lines from Mail messages, and details about Calendar invitations. See [View and respond to notifications](#).

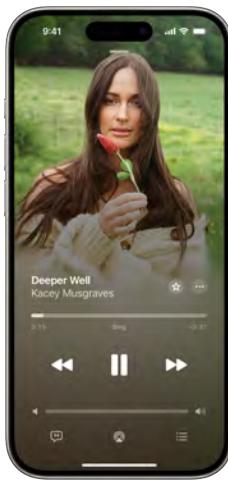
## View and control Live Activities on the Lock Screen

You can view app activities on your Lock Screen, so you can easily follow their progress. Examples include directions from Maps, live sports updates from the Apple TV app, order updates from food delivery apps, and more. These updates are called Live Activities.

When you play music, a movie, or other media on your iPhone, Live Activities allows you to use the playback controls on your Lock Screen to play, pause, rewind, and fast-forward. You can also control media playback on a remote device (such as your Apple TV or HomePod) from your iPhone Lock Screen.

To change your Live Activity settings, go to [Settings](#) , tap [Apps](#), tap the app with the settings you want to change, then tap [Live Activities](#).

*Note:* Not all apps have a Live Activities setting.



## View Live Activities in the Dynamic Island on iPhone

On [supported models](#), you can check alerts and Live Activities—such as a Voice Memo recording, an AirDrop connection, and directions from Maps—in the Dynamic Island at the top of the Home Screen or at the top of the active app. The Dynamic Island appears at the top of the screen whenever your iPhone is unlocked.



You can do any of the following in the Dynamic Island:

- *Expand the activity to see more detail:* Touch and hold the activity or swipe from the center to the right or left side.
- *Collapse the activity to make the Dynamic Island smaller:* Swipe from the right or left side toward the center.
- *Switch between two activities:* Swipe from one side or the other.

## Perform quick actions on iPhone

On the Home Screen, in App Library, in Control Center, and in apps, you can use quick actions menus, see previews, and more.

Perform quick actions from Control Center, the Home Screen, and App Library

On the Home Screen and in App Library, **Draft** touch and hold apps to open quick actions menus.



For example:

- Touch and hold Camera , then choose Selfie.
- Touch and hold Maps , then choose Send My Location.
- Touch and hold Notes , then choose New Note.

**Note:** If you touch and hold an app for too long before choosing a quick action, all of the apps begin to jiggle. Tap Done (on an iPhone with Face ID) or press the Home button (on other iPhone models), then try again.

## See previews and other quick actions menus

- In Photos, touch and hold an image to preview it and see a list of options.
- In Mail, touch and hold a message in a mailbox to preview the message contents and see a list of options.
- [Open Control Center](#), then touch and hold an item like Camera  or the brightness control to see options.
- On the Lock Screen, touch and hold a notification to respond to it.
- When typing, touch and hold the Space bar with one finger to [turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad](#).

## Search with Spotlight on iPhone

On iPhone, you can search for apps and contacts, content in apps like Mail and Messages, and even text in your photos using Live Text. You can check stock and currency information, and find and open webpages, apps, and images in your photo library, across your system, and on the web.

When you search for an app, app shortcuts for your most likely next action appear within the Top Hit. (For example, a shortcut to the Favorites album appears when you search for Photos.)

In Settings > Search, you can choose which apps you want to include in search results. Search offers suggestions based on your app usage, and updates results as you type.

### Choose which apps to include in Search

1. Go to Settings  > Search.

Draft

2. Scroll down, tap an app, then turn **Show App in Search** on or off. Draft

## Search with iPhone

1. Tap  at the bottom of the Home Screen (on [models with Face ID](#)) or swipe down on the Home Screen or the Lock Screen.
2. Enter what you're looking for in the search field.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Initiate your search:* Tap Search or Go.
  - *Open a suggested app:* Tap the app.
  - *Take quick action:* Start a timer, turn on a Focus, find the name of a song with Shazam, run any shortcut, and more. Search for an app's name to see shortcuts available for the app, or create your own using the Shortcuts app.
  - *Check a suggested website:* Tap it.
  - *Get more information about a search suggestion:* Tap it, then tap one of the results to open it.
  - *Start a new search:* Tap  in the search field.

## Turn off Location-Based Suggestions

1. Go to **Settings**  > **Privacy & Security** > **Location Services**.
2. Tap **System Services**, then turn off **Suggestions & Search**.

## Search in apps

Many apps include a search field or a search button so you can find something within the app. For example, in the Maps app, you can search for a specific location.

1. In an app, tap the search field or .
2. Type your search, then tap **Search**.

If you don't see a search field or button, swipe down from the top.

## Add a dictionary

On iPhone, you can add dictionaries, which can be used in searches.

1. Go to **Settings**  > **General** > **Dictionary**.
2. Select a dictionary.

# Get information about your iPhone

## View overall storage availability and storage used per app

Go to **Settings**  > **General** > **iPhone Storage**.

See the Apple Support articles [How to check the storage on your iPhone and iPad](#) and [Manage your iCloud storage](#).

## See battery usage

Go to **Settings**  > **Battery** to see the elapsed time since iPhone was charged as well as battery usage by app. Draft

Draft  
You can also display battery level as a percentage, turn Low Power Mode on or off, and check your battery's health.

See [Monitor the iPhone battery level](#).

## View call time and cellular usage

Go to [Settings](#) > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

## Find your IMEI

You can view the IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) for your iPhone in [Settings](#).

1. Go to [Settings](#) > General > About.
2. Scroll down to find your IMEI.

## See the name, model, iOS version, serial number, and more

Go to [Settings](#) > General > About. The items you can view include:

- Name
- iOS software version
- Model name
- Part and model numbers. To the right of Model, the part number appears. To see the model number, tap the part number.
- Serial number
- Number of songs, videos, photos, and apps
- Capacity and available storage space
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® addresses
- Cellular network
- Carrier settings. To the right of Carrier, the carrier settings version number appears. To see additional carrier-specific information, tap the version number. Contact your carrier for more details.
- ICCID (Integrated Circuit Card Identifier, or Smart Card) for GSM networks
- MEID (Mobile Equipment Identifier) for CDMA networks
- Modem firmware

To copy the serial number and other identifiers, touch and hold the identifier until Copy appears.

To see Legal & Regulatory information (including legal notices and license, warranty, and RF exposure information) and regulatory marks, go to [Settings](#) > General > Legal & Regulatory.

On [supported models](#), you can also find the IMEI on the SIM card tray and the model number in the SIM tray opening.

## View or turn off diagnostic information

Go to [Settings](#) > Privacy & Security > Analytics & Improvements.

To help Apple improve products and services, iPhone sends diagnostic and usage data. This data doesn't personally identify you, but may include location information.

# Manage storage on iPhone

On iPhone, you can check how much storage space is available and increase the available space by removing items you no longer need.

## Check storage on your iPhone

Go to Settings  > General > iPhone Storage.

The available storage is shown at the top of the screen.

## Remove apps and data

When you're low on storage, you can have iPhone automatically remove unused apps.

1. Go to Settings  > General > iPhone Storage.
2. Tap Enable next to Offload Unused Apps.

The unused apps move to iCloud Drive. You can find them in iCloud Drive in the Files app.

You can also remove many apps manually, and redownload them if you change your mind. See [Remove or delete apps](#).

If you have documents and data on your iPhone that you no longer need, you can find and delete them in the Files app. See [Delete a file](#).

You can also review items you downloaded in the TV app and remove ones you already watched. See [Manage your library in the Apple TV app](#).

## Keep selected files

If you have downloaded files that you always want to be able access on your iPhone, you can make sure they're not removed. See [Keep selected files downloaded](#).

# Choose iPhone settings for travel

When you travel with iPhone, choose settings that comply with airline requirements. Some airlines let you keep your iPhone turned on if you switch to Airplane Mode. By default, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and cellular networks are turned off in Airplane Mode—you can't make or receive FaceTime calls or use features or accessories that require wireless communication unless you turn Wi-Fi back on, but you can listen to music, play games, watch videos, and use other apps that don't require internet access.

To choose settings that minimize cellular charges when you travel, see [View or change cellular data settings](#).

## Turn on Airplane Mode

[Open Control Center](#), then tap .

Tap to turn on Airplane Mode.

Draft



You can also turn Airplane Mode on or off in Settings. When Airplane Mode is on, the Airplane Mode icon  appears in the status bar.

### Turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode

If your airline allows it, you can use Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on Airplane Mode.
2. Tap  to turn on Wi-Fi or  to turn on Bluetooth.



If you turn on Wi-Fi or Bluetooth while in Airplane Mode, it may be on the next time you return to Airplane Mode. You can turn it off again in Control Center.



## Personalize your iPhone

### Change iPhone sounds and vibrations

You can change the sounds iPhone plays when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

*Haptic feedback* is the vibration you feel on your iPhone when you perform some actions, such as when you touch and hold any icon on the Home Screen.

Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Drag the slider below Ringtone and Alerts to set the volume for all sounds.
4. Tap Haptics, then choose the haptics behavior for ringtones and alerts—Always Play, Play in Silent Mode, Don't Play in Silent Mode, or Never Play.
5. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone.
6. At the top of the Ringtone or Text Tone screen, tap Haptics, then do any of the following:

- Choose a tone (scroll to see them all).

Ringtones play for incoming calls, clock alarms, and the clock timer; text tones are used for text messages, new voicemail, and other alerts.

- Choose a vibration pattern or tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

You can also change the sounds iPhone plays for certain people. Go to Contacts , tap a person's name, tap Edit, then choose a ringtone and text tone.

## Turn haptic feedback off or on

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Tap Haptics, then choose an option.

When Haptics is set to Never Play, you won't hear or feel vibrations for incoming calls and alerts.

## Have iPhone play a sound effect when it's turned on and off

On iPhone 14 and later, you can have iPhone play a sound when it's turned on and off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Turn on Power On & Off Sounds.

**Tip:** If you're not receiving incoming calls and alerts when you expect them, [open Control Center](#), then check whether Do Not Disturb is on. If the Do Not Disturb button  is highlighted, tap it to turn off Do Not Disturb. (When Do Not Disturb is on, its icon also appears in the status bar.)

# Use and customize the Action button on iPhone

On [supported models](#), iPhone has an Action button in place of the Ring/Silent switch. You can choose which function you want the Action button to perform when you press it. Because the button is so accessible, it's useful for actions you perform often. (The location of the Action button is shown below.) It's easy to change the Action button to perform a different function.



## Customize the Action button

1. On [supported models](#), go to Settings > Action Button.

An image of the side of the iPhone appears with icons representing actions you can assign to the Action button.



2. To choose an action, swipe to the action you want to use—its name appears below the dots.

**Tip:** To customize the Action button to put iPhone in Silent mode, swipe to . To choose another action, swipe to it.

3. If there are additional options for the selected action,  appears below the action; tap it to see the list of options.

For the Controls, Shortcut, and Accessibility actions, you need to tap the button below the action and select a specific option—otherwise the Action button does nothing.

Icon	Action
	<i>Silent Mode:</i> Switch between Silent and Ring for calls and alerts.
	<i>Focus:</i> Turn on a Focus to silence notifications and filter out distractions.
	<i>Camera:</i> Open the Camera app to capture a moment.

Icon	Draft	Action
	<p><i>Visual Intelligence:</i> Use <a href="#">visual intelligence</a> to learn more about the places and objects around you (available on iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, and requires Apple Intelligence).</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Apple Intelligence is not available in all languages or regions. To check whether Apple Intelligence is available for your device, language, and region, see the Apple Support article <a href="#">How to get Apple Intelligence</a>.</p>	
	<p><i>Flashlight:</i> Turn on extra light when you need it.</p>	
	<p><i>Voice Memo:</i> Record personal notes, musical ideas, and more.</p>	
	<p><i>Recognize Music:</i> Find out what song is playing nearby or on your iPhone with Shazam.</p>	
	<p><i>Translate:</i> Translate phrases or have a conversation with someone in another language.</p>	
	<p><i>Magnifier:</i> Turn your iPhone into a magnifying glass to zoom in on and detect objects near you.</p>	
	<p><i>Controls:</i> Quickly access your favorite control.</p>	
	<p><i>Shortcut:</i> Open an app or run your favorite shortcut.</p>	
	<p><i>Accessibility:</i> Quickly use an accessibility feature.</p>	
No Action	Do nothing.	

## Use the Action button

To perform the action assigned to the Action button, press and hold the Action button.

For many functions, the Action button can be used to turn a setting on or off. For example, if the selected action is Silent Mode, you can press and hold the Action button to put iPhone in Silent mode . If you press and hold the Action button again, it turns off Silent mode.

Draft

## Add a control to the Action button Draft

You can assign a Control Center control to the Action button, and then turn the control on or off just by using the Action button.

1. Go to Settings  > Action Button.
2. Swipe to the Controls action, then tap Choose a Control.
3. Scroll through the controls or search for the control you want by entering it in the search field above the controls.
4. Tap the control you want to add.

For example, you can assign Dark Mode to the Action button by tapping . Then you can turn Dark Mode on or off by pressing and holding the Action button.

## Use visual intelligence with the Action button

Visual intelligence helps you learn more about the places, objects, and text around you. On iPhone 16e, iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can use the Action button to access visual intelligence.

**Note:** On [models with the Camera Control](#), click and hold the Camera Control to access visual intelligence.

1. Go to Settings  > Action Button.  
An image of the side of the iPhone appears with icons representing actions you can assign to the Action button.
2. Swipe left or right until the Visual Intelligence option appears onscreen.  
After you complete steps 1 and 2, you don't need to repeat them to use visual intelligence.
3. Point your iPhone camera at an object in front of you, then press and hold the Action button.
4. Tap any of the options onscreen to learn more (options vary; see [Use visual intelligence](#)).
5. Tap  to close the visual intelligence results, then swipe up from the bottom of the screen to close visual intelligence.

## Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen

You can personalize your Lock Screen by choosing a wallpaper, showcasing a favorite photo, changing the font of the time, adding widgets, and more.

You can create more than one Lock Screen, [switch between Lock Screens](#), and even link a Lock Screen to a Focus. So, for example, you could set a specific Lock Screen for when you're working.

### Personalize a new Lock Screen

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize and  buttons appear at the bottom of the screen.  
If they don't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.

3. Tap  to create a new Lock Screen, or to make changes to a Lock Screen, swipe to the screen you want to change, tap Customize, then tap Lock Screen.



4. If you're creating a new Lock Screen, tap one of the wallpaper options to select it as your Lock Screen.

If you choose Photos or Photo Shuffle, see [Customize your Lock Screen photo](#).

5. Tap the time to change the font, color, and style. (See [Change the clock style on the Lock Screen](#).)
6. To add widgets that include information such as today's headlines, the weather, and calendar events, tap Add Widgets, the date, or the field below the time. (See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).)



7. Tap Add or Done, then do one of the following:

- Choose whether to use the wallpaper on both the Lock Screen and the Home Screen: Tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.
- Make further changes to the Home Screen: Tap Customize Home Screen. Tap a color to change the wallpaper color, tap  to use a custom photo, or select Blur to blur the wallpaper so the apps stand out.

## Change the clock style on the Lock Screen

You can change the font and color of the clock on your Lock Screen.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize and  buttons appear at the bottom of the screen.

If they don't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.

3. Swipe to go to the Lock Screen you want to change, tap Customize, then tap the Lock Screen image.

4. Tap the time, then choose a font and color.

Drag the slider to make the font heavier or lighter (available for solid fonts).



To change the date and time setting, see [Change the date and time](#).

## Change the controls at the bottom of the Lock Screen

You can swap out the controls at the bottom of the Lock Screen for other options, like the Calculator when you're shopping or the Translate app when you're traveling. You can also remove these controls entirely or have different controls on different Lock Screens.

On iPhone 16e, you can [activate visual intelligence](#) with a Lock Screen control.

**Tip:** You can customize the controls at the bottom of a Lock Screen, then [link a specific Focus to that Lock Screen](#) that makes use of those controls.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize and  buttons appear at the bottom of the screen.  
If they don't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.
3. Tap Customize, then tap Lock Screen.



4. Tap  on one of the controls at the bottom of the screen, then tap  to open the controls gallery.



5. Tap a control in the controls gallery to replace the one on your Lock Screen.  
6. When you finish customizing the controls at the bottom of the Lock Screen, tap Done at the top of the screen, then tap the Lock Screen.

## Customize your Lock Screen photo

If you choose a photo for your Lock Screen, you can reposition the photo, change the photo style, and more.

Do any of the following:

- *Reposition your photo:* To reposition your selected image, pinch open to zoom in on it, drag the image with two fingers to move it, then pinch closed to zoom out.

*Note:* If moving the photo creates more space on your Lock Screen, the time automatically adapts to fill the available space.

- *Change the photo style:* Swipe left or right to try different photo styles with complementary color filters and fonts.
- *Create a multilayered effect:* If you have a photo that supports layering—like an image with people, pets, or the sky—tap  at the bottom right, then choose Depth Effect.

*Note:* Layering may not be available if the subject is too high or too low, or if it obscures too much of the clock.

- *Create a motion effect with a Live Photo:* If you select a Live Photo that can be translated into slow motion, tap  at the bottom left to play the Live Photo when the device wakes up.
- *Set the shuffle frequency:* If you choose Photo Shuffle, you can preview the photos by tapping , and you can set the shuffle frequency by tapping  and then selecting an option below Shuffle Frequency.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can add a photo directly from your photo library to your Home Screen and Lock Screen. In the Photos app , tap Library, select a photo, then tap . Scroll down and select Use as Wallpaper, tap Add, then choose whether to show it on both your Home Screen and Lock Screen.

## Link a Focus to your Lock Screen

Focus helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. You can set up a Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or to allow only specific notifications (ones that apply to your task, for example). By linking a Focus to your Lock Screen,

Draft

your Focus settings apply whenever you ~~Draft~~ use that particular Lock Screen.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Focus near the bottom of the wallpaper to see the Focus options—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, and Work.

*Note:* If you don't see Focus near the bottom of the wallpaper, go to Settings  > Focus and [set up a Focus](#).

4. Select a Focus, then tap .

## Edit or change your Lock Screen

After you create a custom Lock Screen, you can make changes to it.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.

If it doesn't appear, touch and hold the Lock Screen again, then enter your passcode.

3. Swipe to the screen you want to change, tap Customize, then tap Lock Screen.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Change the font, color, and style of the clock:* Tap the time.
  - *Add widgets that include today's headlines, the weather, and calendar events:* Tap Add Widgets, the date, or the field below the time. (See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).)
  - *Change the wallpaper:* Tap Done, tap , choose a wallpaper, tap Add, then tap Set as Wallpaper Pair or Customize Home Screen.

## Switch between Lock Screens

You can create multiple custom Lock Screens and switch between them throughout the day.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Swipe to the Lock Screen you want to use, then tap it.

*Note:* If a Lock Screen links to a specific Focus, switching from that Lock Screen to another also switches your Focus. See [Link a Focus to your Lock Screen](#).

## Delete a Lock Screen

You can delete Lock Screens you no longer need.

1. Press the side button on your iPhone twice to go to the Lock Screen.
2. Touch and hold the Lock Screen until the Customize button appears at the bottom of the screen.
3. Swipe to go to the Lock Screen you want to delete, swipe up on the screen, tap , then tap Delete This Wallpaper.

# Customize your Home Screen Draft

## Add an app on iPhone

To add an app to your iPhone, you can download it from the App Store. When you download an app, you can choose to add it to both your [Home Screen](#) and [Find and use your apps in App Library](#), or to App Library only.

### Choose where apps get downloaded

1. Go to Settings  > Home Screen & App Library.
2. Choose Add to Home Screen or App Library only.

### Move an app from App Library to the Home Screen

If you download an app to App Library, you can easily move it to the Home Screen.

1. [Find and use your apps in App Library](#).
2. Touch and hold the app until the app icons begin to jiggle and the app moves to the Home Screen, then lift your finger.

## Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPhone



### What are widgets?

Widgets are thumbnails of apps that give you an easy way to view current information at a glance—today's headlines, weather, reminders, battery levels, and more. You can view widgets in Today View and add them to your Home Screen or Lock Screen to keep this information at your fingertips.

You can interact with widgets on the Home Screen or Lock Screen without opening the app—you can take action on the widgets for Music, Podcasts, Safari, Home, Contacts, and more. For example, tap  on the Music or Podcasts widget to play a selection.

**Tip:** A Smart Stack (a widget with dots next to it) is a combined set of widgets that uses information such as the time, your location, and activity to automatically display the most relevant widget at the appropriate time in your day. You can add a Smart Stack from the widget gallery to the Home Screen, then swipe up and down through it to see the widgets it contains.

## Add a widget to your Home Screen Draft

1. Go to the Home Screen, then find [The Home Screen](#) page where you want to add the widget.
2. Touch and hold the background until the apps begin to jiggle, tap Edit at the top of the screen, then tap Add Widget.
3. Scroll or search to find the widget you want, tap it, then swipe through the size and style options.  
The different sizes display different information.
4. When you see the size you want, tap Add Widget.
5. While the apps are still jiggling, move the widget where you want it, then tap Done.

To learn how to add a widget to your Lock Screen, see [Personalize a new Lock Screen](#).

## Turn an app icon into a widget

You can quickly create a widget from an app icon.

1. Touch and hold the app icon on your Home screen.
2. Tap one of the small icons in the menu to choose the size you want the widget to be.

To change the widget back to an app icon, touch and hold it, then tap [icon], the leftmost small icon at the top of the pop-up menu.

## Interact with widgets

You can perform tasks by tapping widgets on your Home Screen, Lock Screen, or [StandBy](#). Tap an item in the Reminders widget to check it off, tap the Play button in the Podcasts widget to play an episode, or tap the Home widget to turn on your living room lights—all without opening an app.

## Edit a widget on your Home Screen

You can customize most widgets right from your Home Screen so they display the information you want to see. For example, for a Mail widget, you can tap the mailbox shown in the widget, then choose a different mailbox so the messages in that mailbox are displayed in the widget. Or you can customize a Smart Stack to rotate through its widgets based on your activity, your location, the time of day, and so on.

1. Go to the Home Screen.
2. Touch and hold a widget to open the [quick actions menu](#).

3. Tap Edit Widget (or Edit Stack, if it's a Smart Stack), then choose options.

For a Smart Stack, you can turn Smart Rotate or Widget Suggestions (below the widget) off or on, reorder widgets by dragging them within the stack, drag a widget from the Smart Stack to the Home Screen, or remove a widget by tapping ⓘ in its upper-left corner.

When you turn on Widget Suggestions, widgets for apps you already use automatically appear in your Smart Stack at the right time based on your past activity. An option lets you add the widget to your stack so it's always there when you need it.



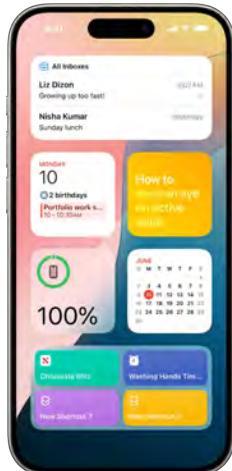
4. Tap Done.

## Remove a widget from the Home Screen

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Touch and hold the widget to open the [quick actions menu](#).
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Remove a widget*: Tap Remove Widget.
  - *Remove a Smart Stack*: Tap Remove Stack.

## View widgets in Today View

To view widgets in Today View, swipe right from the left edge of the Home Screen, then scroll up and down.



*Note:* If the widgets don't appear when you swipe right on the Home Screen, see the next task, [View widgets in Today View and Search when iPhone is locked](#).

## View widgets in Today View and Search Draft when iPhone is locked

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Turn on Today View and Search (below Allow Access When Locked).

# Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

You can move apps and widgets anywhere on the Home Screen to create the ideal layout—frame your wallpaper photo, align apps and widgets along the side or bottom, or drag them to other Home Screen pages. If you have multiple Home Screen pages, each one can have a unique layout. You can also temporarily hide Home Screen pages, change where new apps get downloaded, and more.

**Tip:** You can put all your apps and widgets related to a particular **Focus** (your Work Focus, for example) onto one Home Screen page, and make that page accessible during that Focus.

## Move apps and widgets on your Home Screen

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the items begin to jiggle.
3. Drag the app or widget to one of the following locations:
  - Another location on the same page—including the top, bottom, or side of the screen
  - Another Home Screen page

Drag the app or widget to the right edge of the screen. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear. The dots above the Dock show how many pages you have and which one you’re viewing.



4. When you’re finished, press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button) or tap the Home Screen background (on other iPhone models).

To remove a widget, see [Remove a widget from the Home Screen](#).

## Reset the Home Screen and apps to their original layout

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, tap Reset Home Screen Layout, then tap Reset Home Screen.

Any folders you created are removed, and apps you downloaded are arranged alphabetically after apps that came with your iPhone.

# Customize apps and widgets on the iPhone

# Home Screen

You can customize app icons and widgets on the Home Screen by changing their color, adding a tint, making them larger or smaller, and removing the app name.



1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the icons begin to jiggle.
3. Tap Edit at the top of the screen, then choose Customize.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Make the icons bigger:* Tap Large. (In large size, the names of the apps disappear.)
  - *Choose a dark appearance for icons and widgets:* Tap Dark. To show icons and widgets with a dark appearance at night and a light appearance during the day, tap Auto.
  - *Give the icons a clear look:* Tap Clear to make the icons look like they're made of glass.
  - *Add a color tint to icons and widgets:* Tap Tinted. Use the sliders to choose the color and saturation. You can also use the eyedropper to select a color in your wallpaper for icons.



## Lock or hide an app on iPhone

If you want to show someone something on your iPhone but want peace of mind that they can't get into certain apps, you can lock or hide the apps. Locking an app requires Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to open it. Information inside a locked app won't appear in other locations—for example, in CarPlay, notification previews, search, Siri suggestions, or your call history.

Draft  
When you lock or hide an app on your device, it's only locked or hidden on that device. The locked or hidden status of an app doesn't sync with iCloud.

**Note:** Children under 13 in a Family Sharing group can't lock or hide apps. Anyone aged 13 to 17 in a Family Sharing group can lock or hide an app, but a parent or guardian in the family group can see that the app was downloaded and how much time it's used, and [restrict access to it](#) using Screen Time. (These ages vary by country or region.)

## Lock an app

Locking an app requires Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to open the app.

**Note:** Some of the apps that come with iPhone can't be locked—including Calculator, Camera, Clock, Contacts, Find My, Maps, Shortcuts, and Settings.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Locate the app you want to lock.
3. Touch and hold the app icon until the [quick actions menu](#) opens.
4. Tap **Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)**.
5. Tap **Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)** again, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

## Open an app that's locked

You can open and use an app that you locked.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Locate the app you want to open.
3. Tap the app, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

## Unlock an app

You can unlock an app so you no longer need to use Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode to open it.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Locate the app you want to unlock.
3. Touch and hold the app icon until the [quick actions menu](#) opens.
4. Tap **Don't Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)**, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

## Hide an app

Hiding an app prevents others from seeing or opening it (unless they have a way to authenticate your iPhone using Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode).

When you hide an app, its name is still visible in some places, such as Screen Time, Battery Usage By App (in Settings), and your App Store purchase history.

**Note:** Apps that come installed can't be hidden—only apps you download separately from the App Store can be hidden. Apps that are [set by the user as default web browser](#) or app marketplace (available only in the EU) can't be hidden either.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Locate the app you want to hide.

3. Touch and hold the app icon until **Draft** The **quick actions menu** opens.
4. Tap **Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)**.
5. Tap **Hide and Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)**, authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode), then tap **Hide App**.

The app disappears from your Home Screen and moves to the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library.

**Tip:** To view a list of your hidden apps, go to **Settings** > **Apps** > **Hidden Apps**, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

## Open a hidden app

You can open and use an app that you've hidden.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to go to App Library.
3. Tap the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

The app appears in the Hidden folder.

4. Tap the app, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

## Unhide an app

You can stop hiding an app so that you can see and use it.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Swipe left past all your Home Screen pages to go to App Library.
3. Tap the Hidden folder at the bottom of App Library, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).
4. To move the app out of the Hidden folder, touch and hold the app, tap **Don't Require Face ID (or Touch ID or Passcode)**, then authenticate using Face ID (or Touch ID or a passcode).

The app appears near the top of App Library.

# Organize your apps in folders on iPhone

You can organize your apps into folders to make them easier to find on your Home Screen pages.

## Create a folder

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. To create a folder, drag an app onto another app, then drag other apps into the folder.

A folder can contain multiple pages of apps.

4. To rename the folder, touch and hold it, tap **Rename**, then enter a new name.

If the apps begin to jiggle, tap the Home Screen background and try again.

5. When you're finished, tap Done, then tap the Home Screen background twice.

*Note:* Organizing your apps on the Home Screen doesn't affect the organization of apps in [App Library](#).

## Delete a folder from your Home Screen

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Touch and hold the Home Screen background until the apps begin to jiggle.
3. Tap the folder to open it, then drag all the apps out of it onto the Home Screen.

When the folder is empty, it's deleted automatically.

## Move an app from a folder to the Home Screen

You can move an app from a folder to the Home Screen to make it easier to locate and open.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#).
2. Locate the folder that contains the app, then tap the folder to open it.
3. Touch and hold the app until the apps begin to jiggle.
4. Drag the app from the folder to the Home Screen.

# Remove or delete apps from iPhone

You can remove or delete some of the built-in apps that come with your iPhone.

*Note:* When you remove a built-in app from your iPhone, you also remove any related user data and configuration files. Removing built-in apps from your iPhone can also affect other system functionality.

If you want to limit access to an app without deleting it, see [Lock or hide an app](#).

To block an app to prevent its use, you can use Screen Time settings. See [Block apps, app downloads, websites, and purchases](#).

If you change your mind after deleting apps, you can download them again later (if they're still available in the App Store).

## Delete apps

Do any of the following:

- *Remove an app from the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app on the Home Screen, tap Remove App, then tap Remove from Home Screen to keep it in App Library, or tap Delete App to delete it from iPhone.
- *Delete an app from App Library and the Home Screen:* Touch and hold the app in App Library, tap Delete App, then tap Delete. (See [Find your apps in App Library](#).)

If you change your mind, you can [redownload apps](#) you remove.

In addition to removing third-party apps, you can remove the following built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone:

- [Books](#)

Draft

- [Calculator](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [Clock](#)
- [Compass](#)
- [Contacts](#) (Contact information remains available through Phone, Messages, Mail, FaceTime, and other apps. To remove a contact, you must restore Contacts.)
- [FaceTime](#) (If you remove the FaceTime app from your iPhone, you can still make or receive FaceTime calls in Contacts and the Phone app, but you can't use SharePlay on your iPhone unless you [redownload the app](#). See [Make FaceTime calls](#).)
- [Files](#)
- [Find My](#) (Removing this app doesn't turn off location sharing or Find My for your device or items—it just removes the ability to view locations in the Find My app on that device.)
- [Fitness](#)
- [Freeform](#)
- [Health](#)
- [Home](#)
- [iTunes Store](#)
- [Journal](#)
- [Magnifier](#)
- [Mail](#)
- [Maps](#)
- [Measure](#)
- [Music](#)
- [News](#)
- [Notes](#)
- [Podcasts](#)
- [Reminders](#)
- [Shortcuts](#)
- [Stocks](#)
- [Tips](#)
- [Translate](#)
- [TV](#)
- [Voice Memos](#)
- [Wallet](#) (Removing this app doesn't delete cards and passes you have stored in iCloud.)
- [Watch](#)

Note: In the European Union, there may be other built-in apps you can delete. For more information, see [Delete certain built-in apps from your iPhone or iPad in the European Union](#).

## Change the wallpaper on iPhone

On iPhone, you can change the wallpaper on the Lock Screen and the Home Screen. You can set your wallpaper in Settings or through the wallpaper gallery from your Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).



1. Go to Settings  > Wallpaper, then tap Add New Wallpaper.

The wallpaper gallery appears.

2. Do any of the following:

- Tap a button at the top of the wallpaper gallery—for example, Photos, Photo Shuffle, Live Photo, and so on—to design your wallpaper with a photo, an emoji pattern, a picture of your local weather, and more.
- Choose wallpaper from one of the featured sets (Collections, Astronomy, Weather, and so on).

3. If you're adding a Photo or Photo Shuffle to your wallpaper and want to customize one or more photos for it, see [Customize your Lock Screen photo](#).

4. Tap Add, then do one of the following:

- *Choose whether to use the wallpaper on both the Lock Screen and Home Screen:* Tap Set as Wallpaper Pair.
- *Make further changes to the Home Screen:* Tap Customize Home Screen. Tap a color to change the wallpaper color, tap  to use a custom photo, or select Blur to blur the wallpaper so the apps stand out.

## Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Control Center on iPhone gives you instant access to useful controls—including Airplane Mode, Do Not Disturb, flashlight, volume, screen brightness, and more.

## Open Control Center

Draft

<\_\_ href="Art/V0002\_ControlCenter-1V\_UG.mp4" class="Video \_\_">▶

To open Control Center, do one of the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen. If you continue swiping down, you see more groups of controls.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Swipe up from the bottom.



You can jump to specific groups of controls by swiping through the icons on the right edge of the screen. Swipe up through the icons to go back to the first group.

To close Control Center, swipe up from the bottom center of the screen (on an iPhone with Face ID), or press the Home button.

## Access more controls in Control Center

Many controls offer additional options. To see available options, touch and hold a control. For example, you can do the following in Control Center:

- Touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap ⓘ to open the AirDrop options.
- Touch and hold 📸 to take a selfie, record a video, or take a photo.
- Touch and hold ⏱ at the top right of the screen (while Control Center is open) until you feel a vibration. Then drag the slider to power off the iPhone.



## Customize controls

You can rearrange, add, and remove controls in Control Center.

1. [Open Control Center](#).
2. Tap + at the top left of Control Center to begin editing the controls.



Draft

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Rearrange controls:* Drag a control to a new position.
- *Remove a control or a set of controls:* Tap ⓘ at the upper left of the control.
- *Resize a control:* Drag the handle at the lower right of the control.
- *Add more controls:* Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen to open the controls gallery, then tap a control to add it to Control Center.

*Note:* If you don't see the control you want to add, type its name in the Search field at the top.



4. When you finish customizing, close Control Center by swiping up from the bottom center of the screen.

## Add a custom group of controls

You can add a new group of controls to Control Center.

1. [Open Control Center](#).
2. Tap + at the top left of the screen.
3. Tap the bottommost icon (the little circle) along the right edge of the screen.
4. Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen to open the controls gallery.
5. Tap a control in the controls gallery to add it to the group.
6. To further customize the new group of controls, do any of the following:
  - *Rearrange controls:* Drag a control to a new position.
  - *Remove a control or a set of controls:* Tap ⓘ at the upper left of the control.
  - *Resize a control:* Drag the handle at the lower right of the control.
  - *Add more controls:* Tap Add a Control at the bottom of Control Center to open the controls gallery, then tap another control to add it to the group.

*Note:* If you don't see the control you want to add, type its name in the Search field at the top.

7. When you finish customizing, close Control Center by swiping up from the bottom center of the screen.

## Temporarily disconnect from a Wi-Fi network

In Control Center, tap ⓘ; to reconnect, tap again.

To see the name of the connected Wi-Fi network, touch and hold .

Because Wi-Fi isn't turned off when you disconnect from a network, AirPlay and AirDrop still work, and iPhone joins known networks when you change locations or restart iPhone. To turn off Wi-Fi, go to Settings  > Wi-Fi. (To turn on Wi-Fi again in Control Center, tap Travel with iPhone.

## Temporarily disconnect from Bluetooth devices

In Control Center, tap ; to allow connections, tap the button again.

Because Bluetooth® isn't turned off when you disconnect from devices, location accuracy and other services are still enabled. To turn off Bluetooth, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth. To turn on Bluetooth again in Control Center, tap Travel with iPhone.

## Turn off access to Control Center in apps

Go to Settings  > Control Center, then turn off Access Within Apps.

# Record audio and video on iPhone

You can control the settings for when you capture audio and video in apps and websites—for example, during a videoconference—to maximize the quality of your recording.

## Select an audio input source

You can choose a source for recording audio—for example, your built-in iPad microphone or a Bluetooth microphone.

1. Open the app or go to the website you want to record from.
2. [Open Control Center](#).
3. Tap the button for your app at the top.
4. Tap Microphone, then select a microphone.

## Filter out background sounds in your recording

In certain apps (including Voice Memos), you can choose to include background sounds in your recording, or block them and record only your voice—clear and separate from other sounds.

1. Open the app or go to the website you want to record from.
2. [Open Control Center](#).
3. Tap the button for your app or browser at the top.
4. Select Voice Isolation.

To include the background sounds in your recording, select Wide Spectrum.

## Use AirPods to record audio and capture video in a teleconference

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can use your AirPods as a microphone when you record a videoconference on your iPhone. AirPods have tonal balance and timbre to authentically represent the texture of your voice.

Draft  
You can easily record video from a distance, pressing and holding the AirPod buttons to start and stop video recording.

## Record audio and video with Local Capture

During a videoconference on your iPhone, you can use Local Capture to record high-quality audio and video on your side of the call, with echo-cancellation of other voices.

1. Open the videoconferencing app you want to record from.
2. [Open Control Center](#).
3. Tap the button for your app at the top.
4. Tap Local Capture  in Control Center.

*Note:* If you don't see , you can add it to Control Center to make it easy to access. (See [Use and customize Control Center](#).)

If your iPhone model has a [Dynamic Island](#), the recording indicator will appear there during Local Capture.

*Note:* While you're recording with Local Capture, Voice Isolation won't filter out background sounds, even if you selected it.

After the call, your recording is automatically saved in the Downloads folder in your Files app. Tap  to share it with other call participants. It can be combined with other participants' recordings in a post-production app (such as Logic Pro or Final Cut Pro).

## Adjust the screen brightness and color on iPhone

On iPhone, you can make your screen dimmer or brighter (dimming the screen extends battery life). You can also adjust the screen brightness and color manually or automatically with Dark Mode, True Tone, and Night Shift.

### Adjust the screen brightness manually

To make your iPhone screen dimmer or brighter, do one of the following:

- [Open Control Center](#), then drag  up or down.
- Go to [Settings](#)  > [Display & Brightness](#), then drag the slider.

### Adjust the screen brightness automatically

iPhone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > [Accessibility](#).
2. Tap [Display & Text Size](#), then turn on Auto-Brightness.

*Note:* Turning off Auto-Brightness may increase power consumption.

### Turn Dark Mode on or off

Dark Mode gives the entire iPhone experience a dark color scheme that's perfect for low-light environments. With Dark Mode on, you can use your iPhone while, for example, reading in bed, without disturbing the person next to you.

Do any of the following:

Draft

- Open Control Center, touch and hold , then tap  to turn Dark Mode on or off.
- Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness, then select Dark to turn on Dark Mode, or select Light to turn it off.



## Schedule Dark Mode to turn on and off automatically

You can set Dark Mode to turn on automatically at night (or on a custom schedule).

1. Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness.
2. Turn on Automatic, then tap Options.
3. Select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Dark Mode to turn on and off.

If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

## Turn Night Shift on or off

You can turn on Night Shift manually, which is helpful when you're in a darkened room during the day.

Open Control Center, touch and hold , then tap .

## Schedule Night Shift to turn on and off automatically

Schedule Night Shift to shift the colors in your display to the warmer end of the spectrum at night and make viewing the screen easier on your eyes.

1. Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Night Shift.
2. Turn on Scheduled.
3. To adjust the color balance for Night Shift, drag the slider below Color Temperature toward the warmer or cooler end of the spectrum.

4. Tap From, then select either Sunset to Sunrise or Custom Schedule.

If you choose Custom Schedule, tap the options to schedule the times you want Night Shift to turn on and off.

If you select Sunset to Sunrise, iPhone uses the data from your clock and geolocation to determine when it's nighttime for you.

*Note:* The Sunset to Sunrise option isn't available if you turned off Location Services in Settings > Privacy & Security, or if you turned off Setting Time Zone in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

## Turn True Tone on or off

True Tone automatically adapts the color and intensity of the display to match the light in your environment.

Do any of the following:

- [Open Control Center](#), touch and hold ⚡, then tap ⚡ to turn True Tone on or off.
- Go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then turn True Tone on or off.

## Keep the iPhone display on longer

The iPhone display stays on while you're looking at it, but it dims and eventually locks (for your security) when you look away for a while. If you need the display to stay on longer (for example, when you're navigating with Maps), you can change how long it takes iPhone to automatically dim and lock.

### Change when iPhone automatically locks

You can set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock.

Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then choose a length of time.

*Note:* Delaying or preventing Auto-Lock may increase power consumption.

### Keep your Lock Screen visible with Always-On display

On [supported models](#), the Always-On display setting allows a dimmed version of your Lock Screen to stay visible, even when your iPhone is locked. By glancing at the dimmed screen, you can check essential information, like notifications, the date and time, and information in your widgets.

The display automatically turns off when iPhone is either face down or obstructed from view, not near a paired Apple Watch, when a CarPlay session begins, while Continuity Camera is in use, while [Low Power Mode](#) is on, while [Sleep Focus](#) is on, or at your usual bedtime.

The Always-On display setting is on by default. To turn it off, go to Settings > Display & Brightness, then turn off Always On Display.

**Tip:** When Always-On display is turned on, you can choose whether to show your wallpaper or notifications on your Lock Screen. In Settings > Display & Brightness > Always On Display, turn Show Wallpaper or Show Notifications on or off.

## Use StandBy to view information at a distance while iPhone is charging

You can use StandBy to turn your iPhone into a bedside clock, a photo frame, a display for viewing widgets or Live Activities in full screen, and more.



## Start StandBy

1. Go to Settings > StandBy and make sure StandBy is turned on.
2. Connect iPhone to a charger and set it down on its side, keeping it stationary.
3. Press the side button.
4. Swipe left or right to switch between widgets, photos, and clocks. Swipe up or down to scroll between options for each of these views.

When Night Mode is turned on for StandBy, the screen adapts to low ambient light at night and displays items with a red tint so that it's not intrusive while you're sleeping.



With the Always-On display (on [supported models](#)), StandBy stays on to show useful information. For all other iPhone models, it's easy to activate StandBy any time by either tapping the screen, gently nudging the table your iPhone is on, or using Siri.

[Ask Siri](#), then tell Siri to turn StandBy on or off.

In each location where you charge iPhone with MagSafe, StandBy remembers your preferred view, whether that's a clock, photos, or widgets. For example, you can have it set up for family photos in the kitchen or an alarm clock at your bedside.

## Set display preferences for when StandBy is on

You can choose how long to have your iPhone display stay on when StandBy is on.

1. Go to Settings > StandBy > Display.
2. Choose one of the following:
  - *Automatically*: The display turns off when iPhone isn't in use and the room is dark.
  - *After 20 Seconds*: The display turns off after 20 seconds.
  - *Never*: The display stays on as long as StandBy is on.

# Customize the text size and zoom setting on iPhone

You can increase the size of the text on your iPhone display, make the text bold, and magnify the screen with Display Zoom.

## Increase the text size on iPhone

1. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness.
2. Tap Text Size.

3. Drag the slider left or right to change the text size.

## Make the text bold on iPhone

1. Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness.
2. Turn on Bold Text.

## Magnify the entire iPhone screen

You can magnify the iPhone screen with Display Zoom.

1. Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness.
2. Tap Display Zoom, then tap Larger Text.
3. Tap Done, then tap Use Zoomed.

# Change the name of your iPhone

You can change the name of your iPhone, which is used by iCloud, AirDrop, Bluetooth®, your Personal Hotspot, and your computer.

1. Go to Settings  > General > About > Name.
2. Tap , enter a new name, then tap Done.

# Change the date and time on iPhone

The time zone on your iPhone is set automatically, but if you don't have Location Services turned on or you don't have service, you can change it manually.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Date & Time.
2. Turn off Set Automatically, then tap Time Zone.
3. Enter a location in the search field, then tap the result to change the time zone.

To change the default date and time, turn off Set Automatically, then change the date and time displayed.

**Tip:** To change the font color and style of the clock on the Lock Screen, see [Change the clock style on the Lock Screen](#).

# Change the language and region on iPhone

You choose the language and region of your iPhone during setup. If you travel or move, you can change the language or region.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Language & Region.

- The language for iPhone
- Your preferred form of address. (Choose feminine, masculine, or neutral. Turn on Share with All Apps so all apps personalize how they address you. Available for some primary languages—for example, Spanish.)
- The region
- The calendar format
- The temperature unit (Celsius or Fahrenheit)
- The measurement system (metric, US, or UK)
- The first day of the week
- Live Text (text you can select in images to copy or take action on)

3. To add another language and keyboard to your iPhone, tap Add Language, then select a language.

## Change the default apps on iPhone

You can select alternative, third-party apps—for email, messaging, calling, call filtering, web browsing, passwords, or keyboards—as defaults to launch instead of the built-in Apple apps. Make sure the app you want to switch to supports this feature. If you aren’t sure, [contact the app developer](#).

### Change your default apps

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Default Apps.



- *Email*: To change the default app for sending and receiving email.
- *Messaging*: To change the default app for sending and receiving messages.
- *Calling*: To change the default app for making and receiving calls.
- *Call Filtering*: To turn on or off call blocking and identification options. (See [Identify, screen, filter, and block unknown and spam calls](#)).
- *Browser App*: To change the default app to open links on the web.
- *Passwords & Codes*: This section allows you to turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys for apps and websites, and password, passkey, and code-generation and verification apps.
- *Keyboards*: To add or delete keyboards and third-party keyboard apps.

3. Select the app you want to use as the default.

## Change your default search engine on iPhone

You can select an alternative search engine as the default to search for content on the web.

1. Go to Settings  > Search > Search Engine.
2. Tap the search engine you want to set as the default, then tap .

See [Choose a search engine on iPhone](#).

## Rotate your iPhone screen

Many apps give you a different view when you rotate iPhone.

### Rotate the screen

1. To make sure the rotation lock is off, [open Control Center](#), then tap  if it's red.
2. Turn your iPhone sideways.



### Lock or unlock the screen orientation

You can lock the screen orientation so that it doesn't change when you rotate iPhone.

[Open Control Center](#), then tap .

When the screen orientation is locked,  appears in the status bar (on [supported models](#)).

# Set up Focus, notifications, and Do Not Disturb

## View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Notifications help you keep track of what's new—they let you know if you missed a call, if the date of an event moved, and more. You can customize your notification settings so you see only what's important to you.

Unless you have notifications silenced with a [Focus](#), iPhone displays them as they arrive—they roll in from the bottom of the screen to minimize distraction. You can view them on the Lock Screen in an expanded list view, stacked view, or count view. Pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

**Note:** While you're using an app, you might be asked how you want to receive notifications from it—immediately, not at all, or in a [scheduled summary](#). You can [change this setting](#) later in Settings > Notifications.

### Find your notifications in Notification Center

To see your notifications in Notification Center, do any of the following:

- *On the Lock Screen:* Swipe up from the middle of the screen.
- *On other screens:* Swipe down from the top center. Then you can scroll up to see older notifications, if there are any.

To close Notification Center, swipe up from the bottom with one finger or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

### Respond to notifications

When you have multiple notifications in Notification Center or on the Lock Screen, they're grouped by app, which makes them easier to view and manage.

Notifications from some apps may also be grouped by organizing features within the app, such as by topic or thread. Grouped notifications appear as stacks, with the most recent notification on top.

Do any of the following:

- *To expand a group of notifications to see them individually:* Tap the group. To close the group, tap Show Less.
- *To view a notification and perform quick actions if the app offers them (on supported models):* Touch and hold the notification.
- *To open a notification's app:* Tap the notification.

### Schedule a notification summary

You can reduce distractions in your day by scheduling your notifications to be delivered as a summary—you choose which notifications to include in the summary and what time you want to receive it.

The notification summary is personalized to you and intelligently ordered by priority, based on your current activity, with the most relevant notifications at the top. The summary is especially useful because it allows you to engage with notifications on your own time. You can take this even further by using [Focus](#) to filter notifications while you focus on an activity.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications > **Scheduled Summary**, then turn on Scheduled Summary.
2. Set a time for your summary to appear. If you want to receive another summary, tap Add Summary.
3. Select the apps to include in your summary.
4. Tap A to Z below Apps in Summary, then make sure the apps you want to include in your summary are turned on.

**Note:** If an app you want to include in your notification summary doesn't appear in the A to Z list, you may need to turn on Allow Notifications for the app. Go to Settings > Notifications, tap the app, then turn on Allow Notifications. See [Change notification settings](#).

## View, dismiss, clear, and mute notifications

When notifications appear on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *Handle a notification you receive while using another app:* Tap to view it, then swipe up to dismiss it.
- *Clear notifications:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, then tap Clear or Clear All.
- *Mute notifications for an app:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap an option to mute the app's notifications for an hour or a day. This sends them directly to Notification Center and prevents them from appearing on the Lock Screen, playing a sound, lighting up the screen, or presenting a banner.

To see and hear these notifications again, swipe left on the notification in Notification Center, tap Options, then tap Unmute.

- *Turn off notifications for an app or notification group:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap Turn Off.
- *Change how an app displays notifications:* Swipe left on a notification, tap Options, then tap View Settings. See [Change notification settings](#) to learn about the settings you can change.
- *Clear all your notifications in Notification Center:* [Go to Notification Center](#), tap , then tap Clear.
- *Silence all notifications:* Turn on Do Not Disturb. See [Turn on or schedule a Focus](#).

When you haven't used an app for a while, you may see a suggestion that you turn off notifications for that app.

## Show recent notifications on the Lock Screen

You can allow access to Notification Center on the Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Scroll down and turn on Notification Center (below Allow Access When Locked).

# Change notification settings on iPhone

Choose when and how notifications appear, which apps can send them, and what sounds they make. You can also set up location-based alerts, allow government alerts, and more. Many notification settings apply to all app notifications, while others can be customized for individual apps.

## Change the appearance of notifications

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:
  - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap Count.
  - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap Stack.
  - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap List.

When notifications arrive, you can change the layout by pinching the notifications on the Lock Screen.

To turn off notifications for an app, go to Settings  > Notifications, tap the app, then turn off Allow Notifications.

## Prevent notification previews from appearing on the Lock Screen

You can choose when to have notification previews from an app appear on your Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications, then tap an app below Notification Style.
2. Scroll down, tap Show Previews, then select one of the following:
  - Always
  - When Unlocked
  - Never

## Change the frequency of notifications

To minimize interruptions from notifications throughout the day, you can schedule a notification summary that includes notifications for several apps at once.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications > Scheduled Summary.
2. Turn on Scheduled Summary, then tap Continue.
3. Schedule times for the notification summary.
4. Select the apps to include in your notification summary, then tap Add Apps.
5. To choose when you want notification previews to appear, tap Show Previews, select an option, then tap  at the top of the screen.

Previews can include things like text (from Messages and Mail) and invitation details (from Calendar). You can override this setting for individual apps.

When you use Focus, it delays the delivery of notifications on iPhone to prevent interruptions. You can schedule a time to receive a summary of the notifications you missed. See [Schedule a notification summary](#).

## Choose notification sounds for individual apps

You can choose the sound that plays when a notification arrives for an app.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Tap an app below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.

Draft

3. Tap Sounds, select a sound, then **Draft** at the top of the screen.

You can choose immediate or scheduled delivery for the app's notifications and where you want them to appear (on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, or as Banner at the top of the screen), and more.

## Turn off notifications selectively for individual apps

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Tap an app, then turn off Allow Notifications.

## Turn off location-based alerts

Some apps use your location to send you relevant alerts based on where you are. For example, the Weather app might send you alerts based on your location.

If you don't want to see these types of alerts, you can turn them off.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Turn on Location Services.
3. Tap an app (if any appear in the list), then choose whether you want to share your location while using that app.

See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services](#).

## Turn government alerts on or off

In some countries or regions, you can turn on alerts in the Government Alerts list. For example, on iPhone in the United States, you can receive National Alerts, and you can turn AMBER, Public Safety, and Emergency Alerts (which include both Severe and Extreme Imminent Threat Alerts) on or off (they're on by default). On iPhone in Japan, you can receive Emergency Earthquake Alerts from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Scroll down to the Government Alerts section, then turn on the alerts you want to receive.



3. Tap Emergency Alerts if you want Draft to turn on Emergency Alerts and Local Awareness.

**Note:** In some regions, Local Awareness may improve the timeliness, accuracy, and reliability of certain Emergency Alerts. For example, Earthquake Alerts received on iPhone in California, Oregon, and Washington (including bordering regions) may be more timely or delivered with increased accuracy when Local Awareness is turned on.



4. Turn on Always Play Sound to have Emergency Alerts play a sound even if iPhone is in Silent mode.

Government alerts vary by carrier and iPhone model, and may not work under all conditions. See the Apple Support article [About emergency and government alerts](#).

## Set up a Focus on iPhone

Focus is a feature that helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. When you want to concentrate on a specific activity, you can customize one of the provided Focus options—for example Work, Personal, or Sleep—or [create a custom Focus](#). You can use Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or allow only specific notifications—ones that apply to your task, for example—and let other people and apps know you're busy.

**Tip:** To quickly silence all notifications, [open Control Center](#), tap Focus, then turn on Do Not Disturb.

### Set up a Focus

1. Go to Settings  > Focus, then tap **Focus**—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, or Work.

For your Focus, you can set up the options described in the steps below, but you don't have to set up all of them.



2. Specify which people and apps to allow notifications from during your Focus:

- *People*: Tap People, then tap Allow Notifications From. Tap , select contacts, tap Done, then tap  at the top of the screen. You can also silence specific people by tapping Silence Notification From instead.
- *Apps*: Tap Apps, then tap Allow Notifications From. Tap , select apps, tap Done, then tap  at the top of the screen. You can also silence specific apps by tapping Silence Notifications From instead.

3. Tap Options, then select any of the following:

- *Show silenced notifications in Notification Center instead of on the Lock Screen*: Turn off Show On Lock Screen.
- *Hide notification badges on your silenced apps to prevent the distraction*: Turn on Hide Notification Badges.
- *Silence calls and notifications*: Tap Silence Notifications, then choose Always or While Locked.
- *Dim the Lock Screen during this Focus*: Turn on Dim Lock Screen.
- *Intelligently allow important notifications to interrupt you*: If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, turn on Intelligent Breakthrough & Silencing. Any notifications specifically allowed or silenced will always be allowed or silenced.

4. When you're finished selecting options, tap  at the top of the screen.

5. Specify the Lock Screen and Home Screen options:

- *Choose the Lock Screen for this Focus*: Tap the Lock Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a Lock Screen, then tap Done at the top of the screen.
- *Choose the Home Screen for this Focus*: Tap the Home Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a Home Screen, then tap Done at the top of the screen.

*Note*: To make changes to the Home Screen to customize it further for your Focus, see [Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen](#).

After setting up your Focus, you can return to Settings > Focus at any time and change any of the options you chose above.

Draft

You can [turn a Focus on or off manually in Control Center](#) or [schedule the Focus to turn on automatically](#).

## Add Focus filters

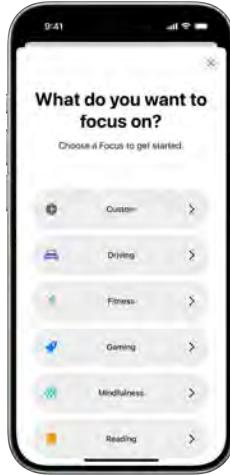
When you set up a Focus, you can add app filters that determine what information apps will show during the Focus. For example, you can choose which mail account or which calendar to use during the Focus.

1. Go to [Settings](#) > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to add filters to.
2. Scroll down to Focus filters, then tap Add Filter.
3. Tap an app, then select the information from that app you want to use during the Focus:
  - *Calendar*: Choose which calendars you want to show during the Focus.
  - *Mail*: Choose which mail accounts you want to use during the Focus.
  - *Messages*: Choose which message conversations you want to see during the Focus—for example, only conversations from people you've allowed notifications from during this Focus.
  - *Safari*: Choose which Tab Group you want to use during the Focus.
4. Tap Add to add the filter to the Focus.

**Note:** Focus filters don't get synced across devices when you have [Share Across Devices](#) turned on in [Settings](#) > Focus.

## Create a custom Focus

If you want to focus on an activity that's different from any of the provided Focus options, you can create a custom Focus.



1. Go to [Settings](#) > Focus.
2. Tap **+** at the top right, then tap Custom.
3. Enter a name for your Focus, then tap Return.
4. Choose a color and an icon to represent your Focus, then tap Next.
5. Tap Customize Focus, then set up the options for your custom Focus, following the instructions in [Set up a Focus](#).

Keep your Focus settings up to date across all your Apple devices

Draft  
You can use the same Focus settings on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings  > Focus.
2. Turn on Share Across Devices.

*Note:* When you turn on Share Across Devices and turn on Share Focus Status, your Focus can show that you have notifications silenced. For example, if you silence notifications when you [Set up a Focus](#), people who text you will see that your notifications are silenced. You can change this setting for specific people on their contact card.

## Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

When you [set up a Focus](#), you can select people and apps you want to receive notifications from by either silencing them or allowing them. For example, set up a Work Focus and allow only notifications from your coworkers and the apps you use for work.

### Allow or silence notifications from specific people during a Focus

1. Go to Settings  > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap People (or tap Choose People), then do one of the following:
  - *Allow specific people:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap , then select from your contacts.

You can also turn on options to allow calls from certain groups of people and allow repeated calls (two or more calls from the same person within 3 minutes).

- *Silence specific people:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap , then select from your contacts.

You can also turn on Allow Calls From Silenced People.

*Note:* Regardless of your Focus settings, you can allow calls from your emergency contacts to come through. See [Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced](#), below.

### Allow or silence notifications from specific apps during a Focus

1. Go to Settings  > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap Apps (or tap Choose Apps), then do one of the following:
  - *Allow specific apps:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap , then select apps.
  - *Silence specific apps:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap , then select apps.

*Note:* You can allow or silence notifications from specific web apps you've added to your Home Screen. (See [Add a website icon to your Home Screen](#).)

You can also turn on Time Sensitive Notifications, which allows all apps to send time-sensitive notifications immediately.

When you use a Focus, it limits the notifications you receive from people and apps, to reflect the settings you specified when you [set up the Focus](#).

When you're using a Focus and have Focus Status turned on and others try to contact you, they may see that you have notifications silenced, but not the name of the Focus you're using.

1. Go to Settings  > Focus > Focus Status.
2. Turn on Share Focus Status, then select the Focus options you want to share your status from.

## Control what Focus Status you share

For each Focus option you [set up](#) (Do Not Disturb, Personal, Work, and so on), you can choose whether to [share your Focus status](#) while you're using that Focus.

When you have Focus status turned on for a Focus you're using, people who try to contact you (using Messages, for example) may see that you have "notifications silenced."

You can prevent messages about your Focus status from appearing in apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Focus > Focus Status.
2. Turn off Share Focus Status.

Alternatively, you can turn off the Focus options you don't want to share your Focus status from (below Share From).

## Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced

You can allow sounds and vibrations from emergency contacts to come through even when your iPhone or notifications are silenced.

1. Open Contacts .
2. Select a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

Or [set up your Medical ID](#) and identify an emergency contact.

# Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

To use a Focus, you can turn it on directly in Control Center, or [schedule it to turn on](#) automatically.

## Turn on a Focus in Control Center

1. Open Control Center, <sup>Draft</sup> then tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to turn on (for example, Do Not Disturb).

*Note:* If another Focus is already on, it turns off when you tap the new one.



2. To choose an ending point for the Focus, tap , select an option (such as "For 1 hour" or "Until I leave this location"), then tap again.



When a Focus is on, its icon (for example, for Do Not Disturb) appears in the status bar and on the Lock Screen, and your status is automatically displayed in the Messages app. People who try to send you a message will see that you've silenced notifications, but they can still notify you if something is urgent.

*Note:* You can also turn a Focus on or off by going to Settings > Focus, tapping the Focus, then turning it on.

## Schedule a Focus to turn on or off

You can schedule a Focus to turn on at certain times, when you're at a particular location, or when you open a specific app.

1. Go to Settings > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to schedule.

If a time appears below Set a Schedule, you can tap it to set a schedule for turning the Focus on and off.

2. To have this Focus turn on automatically based on cues like your location or app usage, tap Smart Activation, turn on Smart Activation, then tap at the top left.

3. Tap Add Schedule, then set the times, a location, or an app you want to activate this Focus.

Draft  
Note: When you set up a Sleep Focus, it follows the sleep schedule you set in the Health app. To add or edit a sleep schedule, tap Open Sleep in Health. See [Add or change sleep schedules in Health](#). You can also change your next bedtime and wake-up time. See [Set an alarm in Clock](#).

## Turn a Focus on or off using Siri

You can use Siri to turn a Focus on or off.

Ask Siri, then ask Siri to turn a Focus on or off. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Turn off a Focus

When you're finished using a Focus, you can quickly turn it off to allow notifications again. After you turn off a Focus, it still appears in Control Center and can be reused.

1. Do any of the following:
  - Touch and hold the Focus icon on the Lock Screen.
  - [Open Control Center](#), then tap Focus.
2. Tap the Focus that's on to turn it off.

## Delete a Focus

When you no longer need a Focus you set up, you can delete it.

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > Focus.
2. Tap the Focus, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Delete Focus.

If you delete a provided Focus, you need to set it up again by going to [Settings](#) > Focus, then tapping .

# Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Turning on the Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. When you turn it on, text messages and other notifications are silenced or limited. You can [have Siri read replies to you](#) so you don't have to look at your iPhone. Incoming calls are allowed only when iPhone is connected to CarPlay—a car Bluetooth® system—or a hands-free accessory.

**WARNING:** For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#). The Driving Focus is not a substitute for following all the rules that prohibit distracted driving.

## Set up the Driving Focus

You can set up the Driving Focus to turn on automatically when you're in a moving car. (You can also [turn it on manually in Control Center](#).)

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > Focus, tap Driving, then turn on Driving.  
If you don't see the Driving Focus, tap  at the top right, then tap Driving.
2. Tap Focus Status, then turn on Share Focus Status.

3. Tap Auto-Reply, then choose who <sup>Draft</sup> should receive an auto-reply when the Driving Focus is on:

- No one
- Recents
- Favorites
- All Contacts

You can edit your auto-reply message to customize it.

Then tap < at the top left.

4. Tap While Driving (below Turn On Automatically), then select when to activate Driving:

- *Automatically*: When iPhone detects you might be driving.
- *When Connected to Car Bluetooth*: When your iPhone is connected to a car's Bluetooth system.
- *Manually*: When you turn it on in [Control Center](#).
- *Activate With CarPlay*: Automatically when iPhone is connected to CarPlay.

Get calls, messages, and notifications when you're a passenger

If you receive a Driving notification when you're in a car, but you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger), you can dismiss the notification.

Tap I'm Not Driving.

When the Driving Focus is on and you're a passenger in a moving car, you can receive calls, messages, and notifications.

## Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

You can choose which options appear in an app's Share menu and rearrange the options.

1. Open a document in the app, then tap .
2. Swipe left over the row of buttons, tap More, then tap Edit.



3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Show an option:* Tap to turn it on.
- *Hide an option:* Tap to turn it off.
- *Add an option to Favorites:* Tap ●.
- *Remove an option from Favorites:* Tap ●.
- *Change the order of options in Favorites:* Drag ≡ next to any option.

4. Tap Done.

## Work with text and graphics

### Enter, select, and revise text

#### Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

You can use the onscreen keyboard to enter and edit text.

*Note:* You can also [use Magic Keyboard](#) and [Dictation](#) to enter text on iPhone.

##### Enter text using the onscreen keyboard

In any app that allows text editing, open the onscreen keyboard by tapping a text field. Tap individual keys to type, or use QuickPath to type a word by sliding from one letter to the next without lifting your finger (not available for all languages). To end a word, lift your finger. You can use either method as you type, and even switch in the middle of a sentence. (If you tap ☒ after sliding to type a word, it deletes the whole word.)



While entering text, you can do any of the following:

- *Type uppercase letters:* Tap ☰, or touch ☰, then slide to a letter.
- *Turn on Caps Lock:* Double-tap ☰.
- *Quickly end a sentence with a period and a space:* Double-tap the Space bar.
- *Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols:* Tap 123 or #+=.
- *Undo autocorrect:* As you type, misspelled words are automatically corrected and temporarily underlined so you know what's been changed; to revert to the spelling as you typed it, tap the underlined word, then tap the spelling you want to use.
- *Correct spelling:* Tap a misspelled word (underlined in red) to see suggested corrections, then tap a suggestion to replace the word, or type the correction.

- *Undo the last edit:* Swipe left with three fingers, then tap Undo at the top of the screen.
- *Redo the last edit:* Swipe right with three fingers, then tap Redo at the top of the screen.

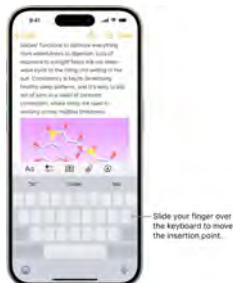
## Turn on keyboard sounds and haptic feedback

You can customize keyboard settings to hear clicking or feel tapping as you type.

Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics > Keyboard Feedback, then turn on Sound or Haptic.

## Turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad

You can turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad to easily move and place the insertion point.



1. Touch and hold the Space bar with one finger until the keyboard turns light gray.
2. To move the insertion point, slide your finger around the keyboard.

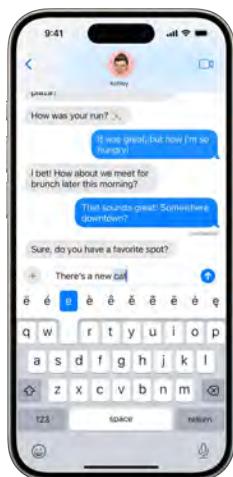
To select text, touch and hold the keyboard with a second finger, then adjust the selection by moving the first finger around the keyboard.

See [Select, cut, copy, and paste text](#) for more ways to select text.

## Enter accented letters or other characters while typing

While typing on the keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key, then slide your finger and release it on the option you want.



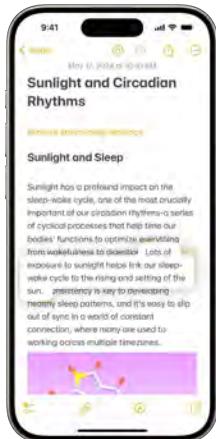
You can also do any of the following:

- *On a Thai keyboard:* To choose native numbers, touch and hold the related Arabic number.
- *On a Chinese, Japanese, or Arabic keyboard:* Tap a suggested character or candidate at the top of the keyboard to enter it, or swipe left to see more candidates.

**Note:** To view the full candidate list, tap the up arrow on the right. To return to the short list, tap the down arrow.

## Move text

1. In a text editing app, **select** the text you want to move.
2. Touch and hold the selected text until it lifts up, then drag it to another location within the app.



If you change your mind about moving the text, lift your finger before dragging, or drag the text off the screen.

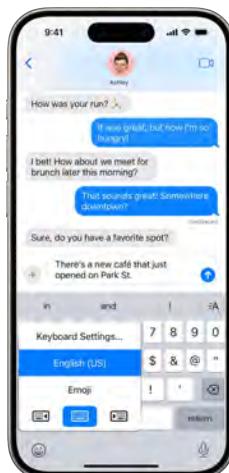
## Change keyboard settings

You can turn special typing features—such as predictive text and auto-correction—off and on.

1. While typing on the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold ⓘ or ⓘ, then tap Keyboard Settings. Or go to Settings ⓘ > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn the typing features (below All Keyboards) on or off.

## Type with one hand

To make it easier to type with one hand, you can move the keys closer to your thumb.



Draft

1. Touch and hold ⓘ or ⓘ. Draft
2. Tap one of the keyboard layouts. (For example, choose ⓘ to move the keyboard to the right side of the screen.)  
To center the keyboard again, tap the right or left edge of the keyboard.

## Dictate text on iPhone

With Dictation on iPhone, you can dictate text anywhere you can type it. You can also use typing and Dictation together—the keyboard stays open during Dictation so you can easily switch between voice and touch to enter text.

Dictation requests are processed on your device in many languages—no internet connection is required. When dictating in a search box, dictated text may be sent to the search provider in order to process the search.

**Note:** Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary.

When using Dictation, cellular data charges may apply. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

### Turn on Dictation

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Keyboard.
3. Turn on Enable Dictation. If a prompt appears, tap Enable Dictation.

To learn more about how Apple protects your information and lets you choose what you share, tap About Dictation & Privacy below Dictation, or see the [Apple Privacy website](#).

### Dictate text

Dictate text and use voice commands to edit and format content.



1. Tap in the text field to place the insertion point where you want to begin dictating text.
2. Tap ⓘ on the onscreen keyboard (or in any text field where it appears).
3. When ⓘ appears near the insertion point in the text field, begin to dictate your text.

- *Add emoji:* Say the name of an emoji, such as "heart emoji" or "smiley face emoji."
- *Add punctuation:* Say the name of the punctuation mark, such as "exclamation point."

*Note:* In supported languages, Dictation automatically inserts commas, periods, and question marks as you dictate. To turn off automatic punctuation, go to Settings > General > Keyboard, then turn off Auto-Punctuation.

- *Add a line break:* Say "new line" or "new paragraph."
- *Add spelling:* Say something like Let's invite Steven S-T-E-P-H-E-N" when you want to spell something out.
- *Edit text:* Say "select" or "delete" followed by the phrase you want to change.
- *Undo or repeat a command:* Say "undo" or "redo" if you change your mind or want to repeat a command.

5. When you're done, tap or say "Stop dictation." Dictation stops automatically when you stop speaking for 30 seconds.

For a full list of the commands you can use while dictating, see [Commands for dictating text](#).

When you use a keyboard for another language, you can use Dictation in that language as well. See [Add or change keyboards](#).

## Turn off Dictation

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Keyboard.
3. Turn off Enable Dictation.

# Commands for dictating text on iPhone

When you dictate text, you can say commands for punctuation, formatting, capitalization, and more. In some languages, you can insert emoji using your voice while dictating. The commands listed below are always available while you're dictating text.

## Punctuation

Command	Result
Period	.
Comma	,
Exclamation point	!
Question mark	?
Dollar sign	\$
Open parenthesis	(

Command	Draft	Result
Close parenthesis	)	
Quote	"	
End quote	"	
Colon	:	
Semicolon	;	
Hashtag	#	

For some languages, Dictation automatically adds certain punctuation as you dictate text.

## Format text

Command	Result
Cap	Capitalize the next word
Caps on ... caps off	Capitalize the first character of each enclosed word
All caps	Make the next word all uppercase
All caps on ... all caps off	Make the enclosed words all uppercase
No caps on ... no caps off	Make the enclosed words all lowercase
No space	Eliminate the space between two words (not available for all languages)
No space on ... no space off	Run a series of words together (not available for all languages)
New paragraph	Start a new paragraph
New line	Start a new line

## Change, insert, and delete text

Command	Result
Change ... to ...	Replace existing text with new text
Insert ... before ...	Insert new text before existing text
Insert ... after ...	Insert new text after existing text
Select ...	Select text
Delete ...	Delete text
Delete all	Delete all text
Undo	Undo the action
Redo	Redo the action

The commands above are available in U.S. English on supported models. Draft

## Insert emoji

You can insert emoji while dictating in certain languages. (For supported languages, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).) For example, say "heart emoji" for ❤ or "car emoji" for 🚗. See below for more examples of emoji commands and the corresponding result.

Command	Result
Smiley emoji	
Halo emoji	
Laugh out loud emoji	
Heart eyes emoji	
Amazing emoji	
Yum emoji	
Congrats emoji	
Goofy emoji	
Sick emoji	
Scream emoji	
Hug emoji	
Fingers crossed emoji	

Command	Draft	Result
Purple heart emoji		
Cheers emoji		
Celebrate emoji		
Speech balloon emoji		
Puppy emoji		
Music emoji		
Rainbow emoji		
Present emoji		

# Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to select and edit text in text fields.

## Select and edit text



1. To select text, do any of the following:
  - *Select a word:* Double-tap with one finger.
  - *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap with one finger.
  - *Select a block of text:* Double-tap and hold the first word in the block, then move the grab points to select text.

2. After selecting the text you want to revise, you can type, or tap the selection to see editing options:

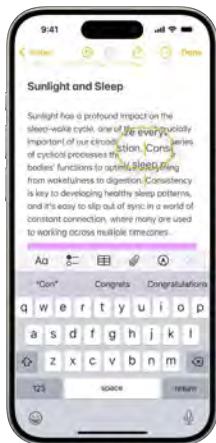
- *Cut*: Tap Cut or pinch closed with three fingers two times.
- *Copy*: Tap Copy or pinch closed with three fingers.
- *Paste*: Tap Paste or pinch open with three fingers.
- *Select All*: Select all the text in the document.
- *Replace*: View suggested replacement text, or have Siri suggest alternative text.
- *Format*: Format the selected text.
- *⋮*: View more options.

**Tip:** To move text without cutting or copying, touch and hold selected text until it lifts up, then drag the text to another location.

### Insert or edit text by typing

1. Place the insertion point where you want to add or edit text by doing any of the following:

- Tap where you want to add or edit text.
- Touch and hold to magnify the text, then move the insertion point by dragging it.



**Note:** To navigate a long document, touch and hold the right edge of the document, then drag the scroller to locate the text you want to revise.

2. Type or paste the text you want to add.

You can also use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy something as you normally would on one Apple device and paste it to another. See [Copy and paste between devices](#).

## Use predictive text on iPhone

Using predictive text, you can write and complete entire sentences with just a few taps. As you type on the iPhone keyboard, you see choices for words, emoji, and information that you'd probably type next (not available for all languages). In Messages, for example, when you type something like:

- "I'm at" followed by a space, your current location appears as an option

- “My number is” followed by a space, your phone number appears as an option

You also see inline predictions that complete the word or phrase you’re currently typing.

## Apply inline text predictions

As you type, predictions that complete the word or phrase you’re typing appear inline in gray text. Tap the Space bar to accept the prediction for the word or phrase; keep typing to reject it.

If you accept an inline prediction and then change your mind, tap , then tap the word you were in the process of typing.

*Note:* Inline predictive text may not be supported in your language. See [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#).

## Apply predictive text

As you type, suggested words, emoji, and information appear above the onscreen keyboard; tap a suggestion to apply it.



*Note:* When you accept a suggested word, a space is automatically entered after the suggestion. If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation, that space is automatically deleted.

To reject the suggestions, tap your original word (shown as the option within quotation marks), or just continue to type.

## Turn predictive text off or on

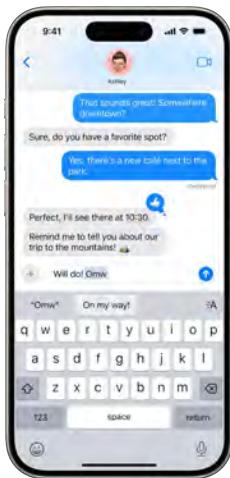
1. While using the keyboard, touch and hold  or .
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then turn Predictive Text off or on.

When you turn off Predictive Text, iPhone may still try to suggest corrections for misspelled words. To accept a correction, enter a space or punctuation, or tap Return. To reject a correction, tap the “x.” If you reject the same suggestion a few times, iPhone stops suggesting it.

*Note:* Turning off the Predictive Text setting turns off both predictive text and inline text predictions.

# Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” That one’s already set up for you, but you can also add your own.



## Create a text replacement

1. While typing in a text field, touch and hold ⓘ or ⓘ.
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then tap Text Replacement.
3. Tap + at the top right.
4. Type a phrase in the Phrase field and the text shortcut you want to use for it in the Shortcut field.

## Have a word or phrase you use and don't want it corrected?

1. Go to Settings ⓘ > General > Keyboard, then tap Text Replacement.
2. Tap + at the top right, then enter your word or phrase in the Phrase field, but leave the Shortcut field blank.

## Create a text replacement for word and input pairs

When using certain Chinese or Japanese keyboards, you can create a text replacement for word and input pairs. The text replacement is added to your personal dictionary. When you type the text shortcut for a word or input while using a supported keyboard, the paired word or input is substituted for the typed shortcut.

Shortcuts are available for the following:

- *Simplified Chinese*: Pinyin
- *Traditional Chinese*: Pinyin and Zhuyin
- *Japanese*: Romaji and Kana

## Use iCloud to keep your personal dictionary up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings ⓘ > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

## Reset your personal dictionary

1. Go to Settings ⓘ > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, then tap Reset Keyboard Dictionary.

All custom words and shortcuts are deleted, and the keyboard dictionary returns to its default state.

# Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Draft  
You can add keyboards for writing or using [Dictation](#) in different languages on your iPhone. You can also change the layout of your onscreen or external keyboard.

If you add keyboards for other languages, you can type in two languages without having to switch between keyboards. Your keyboard automatically switches between the two languages you use most often. (Not available for all languages.)

## Add or remove a keyboard for another language

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard.
2. Tap Keyboards, then do any of the following:
  - *Add a keyboard:* Tap Add New Keyboard, then choose a keyboard from the list. Repeat to add more keyboards.
  - *Remove a keyboard:* Tap Edit, tap  next to the keyboard you want to remove, tap Delete, then tap Done.
  - *Reorder your keyboard list:* Tap Edit, drag  next to a keyboard to a new place in the list, then tap Done.

If you add a keyboard for a different language, the corresponding language is automatically added to the Preferred Language Order list. You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region. You can also reorder the list to change how apps and websites display text.

## Switch to another keyboard

1. While typing text, touch and hold  or .
2. Tap the name of the keyboard you want to switch to.

You can also [switch between Magic Keyboard and other keyboards](#).

## Assign an alternative layout to a keyboard

You can use an alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your keyboard.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Keyboards.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then select an alternative layout from the list.

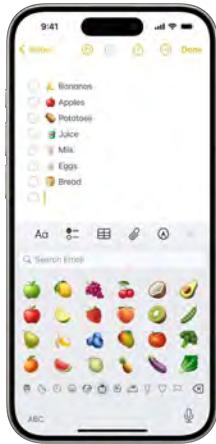
# Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

As you type, you can use the iPhone keyboard to enter emoji, Memoji, and stickers to express yourself in messages and documents.

## Add an emoji, Memoji, or sticker

Use the emoji keyboard to replace text and bring words to life.

1. Tap a text field, then tap  or  to switch to the emoji keyboard.



2. Swipe left or right to browse emoji, Memoji, and stickers, or tap a symbol below the keyboard to jump to that category.

Emoji, Memoji, and stickers you recently used appear in the Frequently Used section of the emoji keyboard.

3. Tap an image to add it to your text field.

To see variations of an emoji—such as different skin tones—touch and hold the emoji, then drag your finger and release it on the variation you like.

4. Tap ABC to return to the regular keyboard.

**Tip:** As you use the keyboard to type, words that can be replaced with emoji appear above the keyboard; tap the emoji to apply it in place of the text.

## Make a sticker with the iPhone keyboard

In supported apps, you can make a new sticker from images in your photo library as you type a message with your iPhone keyboard.

1. Tap a text field, then tap  or  to switch to the emoji keyboard.

2. Tap , then tap .

To search your photo library, enter a term in the search field at the top of screen, or tap a category such as People or Animals.

3. Tap the photo you want to use, then tap Add Sticker.

The sticker is automatically added to your sticker collection.

## Make or edit Memoji with the iPhone keyboard

In supported apps, you can create a Memoji as you type a message with your iPhone keyboard. You can also edit, delete, or duplicate a Memoji that you already created.

1. Tap a text field, then tap  or  to switch to the emoji keyboard.

2. Tap , then tap  to make your first Memoji or tap  to edit, delete, duplicate, or make additional Memoji.

3. Follow the instructions on the screen to make your Memoji, then tap Done.

The Memoji is automatically added to your Memoji collection.

# Take a screenshot on iPhone

Draft

When you need to capture what's on your iPhone screen, take a picture so you can view it later, share it with others, or attach it to documents. You can grab a full screenshot or save a specific portion.

## Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time.



2. [Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot.](#)

## Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Touch ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.



2. [Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot.](#)

## Edit, send, save, or cancel the screenshot

After you take a screenshot, do any of the following:

- *Crop*: Drag the handles to save only the portion you want.
- *Annotate*: Tap ⓘ, then [use the Markup tools](#).
- *Share*: Tap ⓘ, then choose a sharing option.
- *Save*: Tap ⓘ, then choose an option.

By default, screenshots are saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screenshots in one place, open Photos, tap Collections, scroll down to Media Types, then tap Screenshots.

- *Cancel or delete*: Tap ⓘ.

## Do an image search

After you take a screenshot on an [iPhone with Apple Intelligence](#), you can find out more information about the image. See [Interact with what's on your screen](#).

## Take a full-page screenshot

You can take a screenshot of content that exceeds the length of your iPhone screen, such as an entire webpage in Safari.

Draft

1. Do one of the following: Draft

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Quickly press and release the side button and volume up button at the same time.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.

2. Tap Full Page, then do any of the following:

- *Scroll down:* Drag your finger on the preview image on the right to see more of the screen shot.
- *Crop:* Tap , then drag the handles to save only the portion you want.
- *Save as an image:* Tap , then tap Save to Photos.
- *Save a PDF:* Tap , tap Save PDF to Files, then choose a location.
- *Cancel or delete:* Tap .

## Other ways to take screenshots

Here are some alternative methods to using the hardware buttons to take a screenshot:

- *AssistiveTouch:* [Use AssistiveTouch](#) if you prefer tapping the touchscreen to using hardware buttons.
- *Back Tap:* [Tap the back of iPhone](#) two or three times.
- *Voice command:* [Activate Siri](#).

# Take a screen recording on iPhone

You can make a screen recording to capture what's happening on your iPhone screen and save it as a video. You can even turn on the microphone to add audio.

## Record the iPhone screen

1. Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to [open Control Center](#).
2. Touch and hold the background of the screen, then tap Add a Control.
3. In the controls gallery, tap Screen Recording to add it to Control Center, then tap anywhere on the screen to return to Control Center.  
*Note:* After you've added Screen Recording to Control Center, you don't need to add it again for future recordings.

4. Tap , then wait for the 3-second countdown to start recording.
5. To stop recording, tap the red circle at the top of the screen, then tap .

## Take a screen recording with audio

1. Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to [open Control Center](#).
2. Touch and hold , tap Microphone to turn it on, tap Start Recording, then wait for the 3-second countdown to start recording.

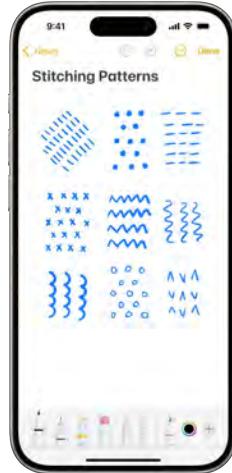
Screen recordings are automatically saved to your your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screen recordings in one place, open Photos, tap Collections, scroll down to Media Types, then tap Screen Recordings.

Draft  
Note: Some apps might not allow you to record their content. You can't record your screen and use screen mirroring at the same time.

## Use Markup tools

### Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to draw and sketch in your documents. You can also use the Markup tools to annotate screenshots, PDFs, and more.



#### Write and draw

1. In a supported app, tap  or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool, then write or draw with your finger.

While drawing, do any of the following:

- *Change the line weight:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then tap an option.
- *Change the opacity:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then drag the slider.
- *Change the color:* Tap  in the toolbar, then tap Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders to adjust your color choice.
- *Undo:* Tap .
- *Draw a straight line:* Tap the ruler tool in the toolbar, then draw a line along the edge of the ruler.
  - To change the angle of the ruler, touch and hold the ruler with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.
  - To move the ruler without changing its angle, drag it with one finger.
  - To hide the ruler, tap the ruler tool in the toolbar again.

3. To close the Markup toolbar, tap  or Done.

#### Erase a mistake

Draft

Draft  
Tap the eraser tool in the Markup toolbar in a supported app, then do one of the following:

- *Erase with the pixel eraser:* Scrub over the mistake with your finger.
- *Erase with the object eraser:* Touch the object with your finger.
- *Switch between the pixel and the object erasers:* Tap the eraser tool again, then choose Pixel Eraser or Object Eraser.

*Note:* If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap ⓘ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

## Move Markup objects

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler tools), then use your finger to drag around the elements you want to move.

*Note:* If you don't see the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap ⓘ or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Lift your finger.
3. Touch the selected element, then drag it to a new location.
4. Tap the screen to turn off the lasso.

## Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to add text, shapes, stickers, and image descriptions to your images and documents.



### Add text

1. In a supported app, tap ⓘ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap +, then tap Add Text.
3. Tap the text box, then use the keyboard to enter text.
4. To adjust the text's font, size, justification, style, or color, tap the tools at the bottom of the screen.
5. To cut, copy, duplicate, or delete the text box, tap Ⓢ.
6. When you're done, tap outside the text box.

7. To close the Markup toolbar, tap  Done.

## Add a shape

1. In a supported app, tap  or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap , then tap Add Shape.
3. Tap the shape you want to add, then do any of the following:
  - *Move the shape:* Drag it.
  - *Resize the shape:* Drag any dot along the shape's outline.
  - *Adjust the shape's direction or dimension:* Drag any green dot along the shape's outline.
  - *Adjust the shape's border color, border width, fill color, and opacity:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
  - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete:* Tap  next to the shape, then tap an option.
4. When you're done adjusting the shape, tap the screen.
5. To close the Markup toolbar, tap  Done.

**Tip:** Pinch the screen open to zoom in on the document so you can adjust shapes up close. To pan when you're zoomed in, drag two fingers. To zoom back out, pinch closed.

## Draw a shape

You can use Markup to draw geometrically perfect shapes—lines, arcs, and more—to use in diagrams and sketches.

1. In a supported app, tap  or Markup, then tap a writing tool in the Markup toolbar.
2. Draw a shape in one stroke with your finger, then pause.

A perfect version of the shape snaps into place, replacing the drawing. (If you prefer to keep the freehand shape, tap .)

The shapes you can draw include straight lines, arrows, arcs, continuous lines with 90-degree turns, squares, circles, rectangles, triangles, pentagons, chat bubbles, hearts, stars, and clouds.

## Add a sticker with Markup

You can use Markup to add stickers from your sticker collection to documents and images.

1. In a supported app, tap  or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap , then tap Add Sticker.
3. Touch a sticker, then drag it onto your document or photo.

To adjust the angle of the sticker, before lifting your finger, rotate a second finger around the sticker.

4. Touch and drag a dot around the outline of the sticker to adjust its size.

You can download sticker packs from the App Store. You can also create stickers in the Messages app, or by lifting subjects from photos and Live Photos. See [Make stickers from your photos](#).

In supported apps, such as Photos, you can use Markup to add descriptions to images. VoiceOver reads your custom descriptions when you use the [Image Explorer](#).

1. In a supported app, tap  or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap , then tap Description.
3. Enter your description, then tap Done.

## Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures on iPhone

You can fill out forms and sign documents that you receive on your iPhone. After you complete a form, you can add your signature and share it with others. You can also use AutoFill to quickly fill out forms with information you saved in the Contacts app. In supported apps, you can use Markup to add your signature to a document or create multiple signatures to use in different images and documents.

### Fill out forms and add signatures

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.  
If prompted, open the document in the Files app, then tap Save.
3. Tap , then tap a blank field to enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
4. To fill out another field, tap it, then enter text.
5. To add additional text or to add your signature to the form, tap , then do one of the following:
  - *Add text:* Tap Add Text Form Box, drag the text box where you want it on the form, then enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
  - *Add your signature:* Tap Add Signature, sign your name with your finger, then tap Done. Drag your signature where you want it to appear on the document.
6. When you're done, tap  to share the completed document using Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.
7. Tap Done to close the document.

### Fill out forms with AutoFill

You can use AutoFill to quickly enter your personal information in supported forms and documents as long as you've [completed your My Card](#) in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.  
If prompted, open the document in the Files app , then tap Save.
3. Tap , then tap a blank field.

4. Tap an option from your saved contact info to complete the field. Draft  
Tap "Choose other" to use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list, such as a family member or caregiver.

5. Tap any field to select it, then tap again to make changes using the onscreen keyboard.

6. Tap Done to close the document.

## Add your signature with Markup

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to add your signature to images and documents.

1. In a supported app, tap ⓘ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap +, then tap Add Signature.
3. Use your finger to sign your name.  
To redo your signature, tap Clear, then sign your name again.
4. Tap Done, then make any of the following adjustments:
  - *Move the signature:* Drag it.
  - *Resize the signature:* Drag any dot along the outline.
  - *Adjust the signature's line weight or color:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
  - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete the signature:* Tap ⓘ next to the signature, then tap an option.
5. When you're finished adjusting the signature, tap outside the text box.

## Add or delete signatures

After you create a signature, iPhone saves it to use the next time you add a signature with Markup. You can create multiple signatures, such as a nickname or initials, and delete signatures.

1. In a supported app, tap ⓘ or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap +, then tap Add Signature.
3. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap + to create a new signature.
4. Tap the arrow next to New Signature, then tap the type of signature you want to add, such as given name, nickname, or initials.
5. Use your finger to sign, then tap Done.

To delete a signature, tap +, then tap Add Signature. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap ⓘ next to any signatures you want to delete.

# Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Live Text recognizes text within your photos, videos, and images you find online. You can interact with this text in multiple ways. You can select text to copy, share, or translate, or you can use quick actions to perform tasks like making a phone call, opening a website, or converting currencies.

Live Text can be used in Safari, Photos, Draft, Camera, Quick Look, and more.

## Turn on Live Text

Before you start using Live Text, make sure it's turned on for all supported languages.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Language & Region.
2. Turn on Live Text (green is on).

## Copy, translate, and look up text in a photo or video

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap , then touch and hold the selected text.
3. Use the grab points to select specific text, then do any of the following:
  - *Copy Text*: Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
  - *Select All*: Select all the text within the frame.
  - *Look Up*: Show personalized web suggestions.
  - *Translate*: Translate text.
  - *Search the web*: Look up the selected text on the web.
  - *Share*: Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.
4. Tap  to return to the photo or video.

## Perform tasks within a photo or video with quick actions

Depending on the content of the photo or video, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, get directions, translate languages, convert currencies, and more.

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap .
3. Tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap  to return to the photo or video.

Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#).

## Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in photos, images, and videos. Visual Look Up can also identify food in a photo and suggest related recipes.

Visual Look Up can be used in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



1. Open a photo or image in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.  
If the Info button displays a symbol with stars such as ⓘ or ⓘ, Visual Look Up is available.
2. Tap the starred Info button, then tap Look Up at the top of the photo information to view the Visual Look Up results.
3. Tap ⓘ to close the Visual Look Up results, then swipe down on the photo or video frame to close the photo information.

Visual Look Up isn't available in all regions or languages. See [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#).

## Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

You can isolate the subject of a photo or video frame from its background and then copy or share it in other documents and apps.

This feature can be used in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



1. Open a photo in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.

2. Touch and hold the subject. When an outline appears around the subject, do one of the following:

- Continue to touch the subject, then with another finger, open a document in another app and drag the subject into the document.
- Tap Copy or Copy Subject, then paste the subject into an email, text message, or note.
- Tap Look Up to learn more about the subject.
- Tap Add Sticker, then save the sticker to use in photos, email, text messages, and more.
- Tap Share, then choose a sharing option, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

# Camera

## Take photos

### iPhone camera basics

Learn how to take photos with your iPhone camera. Choose from camera modes such as Photo, Video, Cinematic, Pano, and Portrait, and zoom in or out to frame your shot.

#### Open Camera

To open your iPhone camera, do any of the following:

- Tap the Camera  app on the iPhone Home Screen.
- Swipe left on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- Touch and hold  on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- [Open Control Center](#), then tap .

[Ask Siri](#): "Open Camera." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

- On [models with an Action button](#), you can assign the Action button to open Camera. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).
- On [supported models](#), click [the Camera Control](#) to open Camera.

*Note:* For your security, a green dot appears in the top-right corner of the screen when Camera is in use. See [Control access to hardware features](#).

#### Take a photo

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the Shutter button or press either volume button to take the photo.



On [supported models](#), click the [Camera Control](#) to open Camera, then click it again to take a photo.

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can press the AirPod stem to take a photo. In the AirPods User Guide, see [Use AirPods or AirPods Pro with supported camera apps](#).

## Switch between camera modes

When you first open Camera , the Photo and Video modes appear below the camera frame. Tap Photo or Video to switch between the two modes. To select other camera modes, touch Photo or Video then slide your finger left or right.

Depending on your iPhone model, you can select from the following modes:

- *Photo*: Take still photos, [Live Photos](#), and on supported models, you can [take a portrait in Photo mode](#).
- *Video*: Record a video; see [Record a video](#).
- *Time-lapse*: Create a time-lapse video of motion over a period of time; see [Record a time-lapse video](#).
- *Slo-mo*: Record a video with a slow-motion effect; see [Record a slow-motion video](#).
- *Cinematic*: Apply a depth-of-field effect to your videos ([on supported models](#)); see [Record Cinematic videos](#).
- *Portrait*: Apply a depth-of-field effect to your photos; see [Take a portrait in Portrait mode](#).
- *Spatial*: Take spatial photos and videos to relive in 3D on Apple Vision Pro; see [Take spatial photos and record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro](#).
- *Pano*: Capture a panoramic landscape or other scene; see [Take a panoramic photo](#).
- *Square*: Take photos with a square ratio.

To set a mode other than Photo as the default mode when you open Camera, see [Save camera settings](#).

## Zoom in or out

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

- On all models, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.
- On [iPhone models with Dual and Triple camera systems](#), switch between 0.5x, 1x, 2x, 2.5x, 3x, and 5x to quickly zoom in or out (depending on your model). For a more precise zoom, touch and hold the zoom controls, then drag the slider right or left.
- On [supported models](#), lightly double-press the Camera Control to open an overlay that shows the available camera settings. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to the Zoom setting, then lightly press to select it. Slide your finger to zoom in and out.

## Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

Before taking a photo, you can use the camera tools on your iPhone to customize and improve your shot.

### Adjust the camera's focus and exposure

Before you take a photo, the iPhone camera automatically sets the focus and exposure, and face detection balances the exposure across many faces. If you want to manually adjust the focus and exposure, do the following:

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the screen where you want to move the focus area.
3. Next to the focus area, drag  up or down to adjust the exposure.



**Tip:** To lock your manual focus and exposure settings for upcoming shots, touch and hold the focus area until you see AE/AF Lock; tap the screen to unlock settings.

On [supported models](#), lightly double-press the Camera Control to open an overlay that shows the available camera settings. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to the Exposure setting, then lightly press to select it. Slide your finger to adjust the exposure.

### Lock the exposure setting

On iPhone 11 and later, you can lock the exposure setting for upcoming shots.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Exposure.

3. Drag the slider to adjust the exposure level.

The exposure locks until the next time you open Camera. To save the exposure control so it's not reset when you open Camera, go to Settings  > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Exposure Adjustment.

## Turn the flash on or off

Your iPhone camera is set to automatically use the flash when needed. To manually control the flash before you take a photo, do the following:

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Flash.
3. Tap again to toggle between Flash On, Flash Off, and Flash Auto.
4. To close the control menu, tap the screen outside of the menu.

## Take a photo with a filter

On supported models, you can use a filter to give your photo a color effect.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

Make sure Camera is in Photo or Portrait mode; see [Switch between camera modes](#).

2. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Filter.
3. Swipe left or right on the filter menu to preview the filter options.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take your shot.
5. To stop using a filter, swipe to Original. Tap  to close the filter menu.

You can remove or change a photo's filter in the Photos app. See [Apply filter effects](#).

On [supported models](#), use [latest generation Photographic Styles](#) instead of Filters to give your photos a customized look.

## Use the timer

You can set a timer on your iPhone camera to give yourself time to get in the shot.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Timer.
3. Tap 3s, 5s, or 10s.
4. Tap the Shutter button to start the timer and get in the frame.
5. To stop using the timer, tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, tap Timer, then tap Off.

## Change the aspect ratio

On iPhone 11 and later, you can choose between 1:1, 4:3, or 16:9 aspect ratios.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Aspect.
3. Tap again to toggle between 1:1, 4:3, or 16:9.
4. To close the control menu, tap the screen outside of the menu.

## Use a grid and level to straighten your shot

Draft

To display a grid or level on the camera **Draft** screen that can help you straighten and compose your shot, go to **Settings** > **Camera**, then turn on **Grid and Level**.

After you take a photo, you can use the editing tools in the Photos app to further align shots and adjust horizontal and vertical perspective. See [Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective](#).

## Use Photographic Styles with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), you can use a Photographic Style to customize how your iPhone camera captures photos. Choose from the preset styles—Rich Contrast, Vibrant, Warm, or Cool—then customize them further by adjusting the tone and warmth values. Camera applies your choice every time you take a photo in Photo mode. You can change and adjust Photographic Styles right in Camera.

With [supported models](#), use latest generation Photographic Styles.

### Choose a Photographic Style

Your iPhone camera is automatically set to Standard—a balanced style that is true to life. To choose a different Photographic Style, do the following:

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen, or tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap **Styles**.
3. Swipe left to preview the different styles:
  - *Rich Contrast*: Darker shadows, richer colors, and stronger contrast create a dramatic look.
  - *Vibrant*: Wonderfully bright and vivid colors create a brilliant yet natural look.
  - *Warm*: Golden undertones create a warmer look.
  - *Cool*: Blue undertones create a cooler look.

To customize a Photographic Style, tap the Tone and Warmth controls below the frame, then drag the slider left or right to adjust the value. Tap  to reset the values.

4. Tap  to apply the Photographic Style.
5. Tap  to make adjustments as you take photos, or to switch back to Standard.

You can also change Photographic Styles in Settings: go to **Settings** > **Camera** > **Photographic Styles**.

## Use latest generation Photographic Styles

You can use latest generation Photographic Styles on iPhone 16 models (except iPhone 16e) and later to specify how photos are captured by your iPhone camera. Photographic Styles adjust specific colors in certain parts of your photos to create the exact look you want. Your Photographic Style is saved and reflected across all of the photos you take. After you choose a Photographic Style, you can make adjustments to it in Camera or edit it in the Photos app.

**Note:** To edit Photographic Styles in the Photos app, Camera needs to capture photos with High Efficiency image capture. To turn on High Efficiency, go to Settings  > Camera > Formats, then tap High Efficiency.

To use Photographic Styles [on other models](#), see [Use Photographic Styles](#).

## Choose your default Photographic Style

To get started, choose the default Photographic Style you want your iPhone camera to use. The Photographic Style you select will be specific to the skin undertones your camera captures. After you select a default style, you can always adjust or choose a different style in Camera before you take a photo (see [Change a Photographic Style](#), below).

1. Go to Settings  > Camera > Photographic Styles.
2. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Note:** Before choosing a Photographic Style, you need to have taken at least four photos with your iPhone camera.

## Adjust your Photographic Style

After you choose a default Photographic Style, you can fine-tune its tone, color, and intensity before you take a photo in Camera.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen or tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Styles.
3. Drag your finger on  to simultaneously adjust the tone and color.
4. Drag your finger on the slider to adjust the intensity level of the palette.

As you make adjustments, the values for tone, color, and palette are displayed at the top of the screen. If you want to reset the values, tap the round arrow.

5. Tap .

After you take a photo, you can further adjust the Photographic Style values in the Photos app. See [Edit the Photographic Style of a photo](#).

## Change a Photographic Style

In Camera, you can select a different Photographic Style to change the overall mood before you take a photo.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen or tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Styles.
3. Swipe left or right on the camera frame to choose a new style such as Amber, Rose Gold, Quiet, or Ethereal.
4. Drag your finger on  to simultaneously adjust the tone and color.
5. Drag your finger on the slider to adjust the intensity level of the palette.

As you make adjustments, the values for tone, color, and palette are displayed at the top of the screen. Tap the round arrow to reset these values.

6. Tap  when you're finished.

## Remove or reset a Photographic Style

Draft

You can remove your default **Photographic Style** or set a new one.

1. Go to **Settings** on your iPhone. > Camera > Photographic Styles.
2. Tap Camera, tap Photographic Styles, then tap Reset to Standard.
3. Tap Get Started to set a new default style.

## Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Use Camera to take Live Photos with your iPhone. A Live Photo captures what happens just before and after you take a photo, including the audio. You take a Live Photo just like you do a normal photo.

### Take a Live Photo

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Make sure Camera is set to **Photo mode**.

*Note:* Live Photo is on by default.

3. Tap the Shutter button or [click the Camera Control](#) to take a Live Photo.
4. To play the Live Photo, tap the photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen, then touch and hold the screen.

Live Photos are automatically saved in your photo library in the Photos app. To add effects such as bounce and loop to Live Photos, see [Add effects to a Live Photo](#).

### Turn Live Photos off and on

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Make sure Camera is set to **Photo mode**.
3. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Live.
4. Tap again to toggle between Live Off, Live On, and Live Auto.
5. To close the control menu, tap the screen anywhere outside of the menu.

If you've already taken a Live Photo and want to turn the effect off in the saved photo, see [Make Live Photo edits](#).

*Note:* Live Photos aren't available when ProRAW or HEIF Max is turned on. See [Take Apple ProRAW photos](#).

## Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera

Use Burst mode with your iPhone camera to capture photos of a moving subject, or when you want to take multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from. You can take Burst photos with the rear and front-facing cameras.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe the Shutter button to the left to begin taking photos in rapid succession.
3. Lift your finger to stop.

4. To select the photos you want to **keep**, tap the Burst thumbnail, then tap **Burst (number)**.

Gray dots below the thumbnails mark the suggested photos to keep.

5. Tap the circle in the lower-right corner of each photo you want to save as an individual photo, then tap **Done**.

To delete the entire Burst, tap the thumbnail, then tap .

**Tip:** You can also press and hold the volume up button to take Burst shots. Go to **Settings**  > **Camera**, then turn on **Use Volume Up for Burst**.

## Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to take a photo of yourself (a selfie). You can take selfies in Photo mode, Portrait mode, or Video mode.

To learn about camera modes, see [Switch between camera modes](#).

### Take a selfie

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or use the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)) to switch to the front-facing camera.
3. Hold your iPhone in front of you.

**Tip:** Tap the arrows inside the frame to increase the field of view.

4. Tap the Shutter button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control to capture the image or start recording.



### Automatically expand the selfie frame

On [supported models](#), your iPhone can automatically expand or rotate the camera frame to fit more people into a group selfie.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to switch to the front-facing camera.

3. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then <sup>Draft</sup> turn on the following:

- *Auto Zoom*: The frame will automatically expand when a person's face is detected at the edge of the frame.
- *Auto Rotate*: The frame will automatically rotate to landscape orientation when a person's face is detected outside of the frame.

**Tip:** For best results, make sure everyone is looking at the camera and within ten feet of it.

4. Tap the Shutter button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control to capture the image.

The Auto Zoom and Auto Rotate settings stay turned on. To turn them off, repeat steps one through three, above.

To take a selfie that captures the shot as you see it in the front-facing camera frame, rather than reversing it, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn on Mirror Front Camera.

## Take panoramic photos with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to take a panoramic photo of your surroundings in [Pano mode](#).

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Choose Pano mode.
3. Tap the Shutter button or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)).
4. Pan slowly in the direction of the arrow, keeping it on the center line.
5. To finish, tap the Shutter button again or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)).

Tap the arrow to pan in the opposite direction. To pan vertically, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation. You can reverse the direction of a vertical pan, too.

## Take macro photos and videos with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), Camera uses the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photography—stunning close-ups in sharp focus. You can take macro photos and Live Photos, and shoot macro slow-motion and time-lapse videos.

### Take a macro photo or video

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

Make sure Camera is in [Photo or Video mode](#).

2. Get close to the subject—as close as 2 centimeters. Camera will automatically switch to the Ultra Wide camera to enable macro photography.
3. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo or the Record button to start and stop recording video. [On models with the Camera Control](#), click to take a photo or to start and stop recording.

## Take a macro slow-motion or time-lapse video Draft

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Switch to [Slo-mo or Time-lapse mode](#).
3. Tap  $.5x$  to switch to the Ultra Wide camera, then move close to the subject.
4. Tap the Record button or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)) to start and stop recording.

## Control automatic macro switching

You can control when Camera automatically switches to the Ultra Wide camera for capturing macro photos and videos.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

2. Get close to your subject.

When you get within macro distance of your subject,  appears on the screen.

3. Tap  to turn off automatic macro switching.

**Tip:** If the photo or video becomes blurry, you can back up or tap  $.5x$  to switch to the Ultra Wide camera.

4. Tap  to turn automatic macro switching back on.

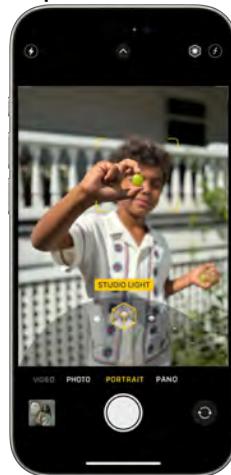
To turn off the manual Macro Control when taking photos and videos, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Macro Control.

If you want to maintain your Macro Control setting between camera sessions, go to Settings  > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Macro Control.

## Take portraits with your iPhone camera

You can apply a depth-of-field effect that keeps your subject—people, pets, or objects—sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. You can also apply and adjust different lighting effects to your portraits.

### Take a portrait in Portrait mode



1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

2. Select [Portrait mode](#), or [on supported models](#), use the Camera Control to [select the Depth setting](#).

Depending on your model, tap 1x, 2x, 3x, or 5x to switch between different zoom options, or pinch the screen to zoom in and out.

3. Drag  to choose a lighting effect:

- *Natural Light*: The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
- *Studio Light*: The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
- *Contour Light*: The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
- *Stage Light*: The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
- *Stage Light Mono*: The effect is similar to Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
- *High-Key Light Mono*: The effect creates a grayscale subject on a white background.

4. Tap the Shutter button or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)) to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can remove the portrait effect if you don't like it. In the Photos app, open the photo, tap Edit, then tap Portrait to turn the effect on or off.

**Note:** On [supported models](#), Night mode turns on when you take a portrait in low-light situations with the wide (1x) lens. To learn more about Night mode, see [Take Night mode photos](#).

**Note:** [Photographic Styles](#) are applied to portraits that you take in Portrait mode.

## Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Select [Portrait mode](#), then frame your subject.
3. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Aperture.

The Depth Control slider appears below the frame.

4. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
5. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.
6. Tap  to close the Depth Control slider.

[On supported models](#), you can also adjust the depth control using the Camera Control. See [Select and adjust the Camera Control settings](#).

After you capture a portrait, you can use the Depth Control slider in the Photos app to further adjust the background blur effect. See [Edit Portrait mode photos](#).

## Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode

You can virtually adjust the position and intensity of the Portrait Lighting to sharpen eyes or brighten and smooth facial features.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

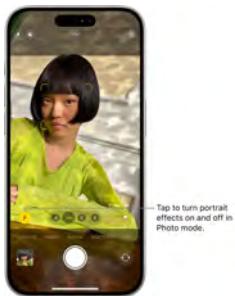
2. Select [Portrait mode](#), then drag  to choose a lighting effect.
3. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Intensity.

The Portrait Lighting slider appears below the frame.
4. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
5. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.
6. Tap  to close the Portrait Lighting slider.

After you capture a portrait, you can edit the Portrait Lighting levels in the Photos app. See [Edit Portrait mode photos](#).

## Take a portrait in Photo mode

On [supported models](#), you can apply the portrait effect and blur the background on photos you take in Photo mode.



1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

If your iPhone detects a person, dog, or cat, in the frame,  automatically appears at the bottom of the view finder. If  doesn't appear, tap a subject in the view finder to focus on it and  will appear. If you want to change the focus point of the portrait, tap a different subject in the view finder.

*Note:* Your iPhone captures depth information when  appears while taking photos in Photo mode, so if you decide not to apply the portrait effect when you take the shot, you can apply it later in the Photos app. See [Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode](#).

2. Tap  to turn on the portrait effect.

To make adjustments to the shot, tap the zoom options or drag  to choose a lighting effect.

3. Tap the Shutter button or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)) to take the photo with the portrait effect.

*Note:* [Photographic Styles](#) are applied to portraits that you take in Photo mode.

## Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), your iPhone camera uses Night mode to capture more detail and brighten your shots in low-light situations. The length of the exposure in Night mode is determined automatically, but you can experiment with the manual controls.

**Tip:** Use a tripod for even more detailed Night mode photos.

Night mode is available on the following iPhone models and cameras:

- iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, *iPhone 16 Pro*, *iPhone 16 Pro Max*, *iPhone 15 Pro*, *iPhone 15 Pro Max*, *iPhone 14 Pro*, *iPhone 14 Pro Max*, *iPhone 13 Pro*, and *iPhone 13 Pro Max*: Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, Telephoto (3x) camera, Telephoto (5x) camera, and front camera
- iPhoneX, *iPhone 16*, *iPhone 16 Plus*, *iPhone 15 models*, *iPhone 14 models*, *iPhone 13 models*, and *iPhone 12 models*: Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, and front camera
- iPhoneXXXX, *iPhone 16e* and *iPhone 11 models*: Wide (1x) camera



1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.

In low-light situations, Night mode turns on automatically.

2. Tap  at the top of the screen to turn Night mode off and on.
3. To experiment with Night mode, tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Night mode. Tap again to toggle to Night Mode Max, then drag the slider left or right to choose between the Auto and Max timers. With Auto, the time is determined automatically; Max uses the longest exposure time. The setting you choose is saved for your next Night mode shot.
4. Tap the Shutter button, or click the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)), then hold your iPhone still to take your shot.

Crosshairs appear in the frame if your iPhone detects movement during capture—align the crosshairs to help you reduce motion and improve the shot.

To stop taking a Night mode shot mid-capture, tap the Stop button below the slider.

On [supported models](#), you can take Night mode [selfies](#) and [time-lapse videos](#).

On [supported models](#), you can take Night mode photos with [Portrait mode](#).

## Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), you can use Camera to take photos in Apple ProRAW. Apple ProRAW combines the information of a standard RAW format along with iPhone image processing to offer additional creative control when you make adjustments to exposure, color, and white balance.

Apple ProRAW is available on all cameras, including the front camera. Apple ProRAW isn't supported in Portrait mode.

## Set up Apple ProRAW

To set up Apple ProRAW on [supported models](#), go to Settings  > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

*Note:* Apple ProRAW photos retain more information about the images, resulting in larger file sizes.

## Take a photo with Apple ProRAW

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Depending on your settings, tap either JPEG or HEIC at the top of the screen, then tap RAW.
3. To close the menu, tap the screen anywhere outside of it.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take your shot.

To preserve your ProRAW setting, go to Settings  > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

To learn more about Apple ProRAW, see the Apple Support article [About Apple ProRAW](#).

## Change Apple ProRAW default resolution and format

On iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, iPhone 16 Pro, iPhone 16 Pro Max, iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, and iPhone 14 Pro Max, you can set your ProRAW default resolution to 12 MP, 48 MP, or HEIF 48 MP.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then tap Formats.
3. Turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control.
4. Tap ProRAW Format, then select an option.

# Use the Camera Control on iPhone

The Camera Control [on supported models](#) lets you quickly open your iPhone camera and access common camera settings. The location of the Camera Control is shown below.



## Open Camera with the Camera Control

Click the Camera Control to open Camera .

## Take a photo or video with the Camera Control

1. Click the Camera Control to open Camera .
2. Click again to take a photo, or click and hold to record a video.

*Note:* If your camera is set to Video mode on launch, click to start recording.

## Settings available with the Camera Control

You can select and adjust any of the following settings with the Camera Control:

- *Exposure:* Brighten or darken the scene by increasing or decreasing the exposure.
- *Depth:* Increase or decrease the background depth-of-field effect (this setting turns on Portrait mode if it wasn't already selected).
- *Zoom:* Zoom in or out.
- *Cameras:* Switch between cameras, including the front-facing camera.
- *Style:* Change the [Photographic Style](#).
- *Tone:* Lighten or deepen the mood by increasing or decreasing the tone.

*Note:* Not all controls are available in all [camera modes](#).

## Select and adjust the Camera Control settings

1. Click the Camera Control to open Camera .
2. Lightly press the Camera Control twice to open an overlay that shows the available settings for that camera mode (see below).



3. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to scroll through the settings choices, then lightly press to select the setting you want.

4. Slide your finger on the Camera Control to adjust the setting.

The setting is saved and appears the next time you lightly press the Camera Control.

5. Click the Camera Control to take your shot.

## Lock the exposure and focus with the Camera Control

You can use the Camera Control to lock the exposure and focus settings on a subject as you take photos and record video.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then turn on Lock Focus and Exposure.

After you complete steps 1 and 2, you don't need to repeat them.

3. Click the Camera Control to open Camera .
4. Lightly press and hold the Camera Control until you see AE/AF Lock above the frame.
5. Keep your finger touching the Camera Control to maintain the AE/AF Lock.

*Note:* If you release the Camera Control, the AE/AF Lock turns off.

6. Click the Camera Control to take photos or click and hold to record video.
7. Release the Camera Control to turn off the AE/AF Lock.

## Customize how you use the Camera Control

You can change the number of clicks it takes to open Camera with the Camera Control from one click to two.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then tap Single Click or Double Click.

You can also adjust accessibility options for the Camera Control, such as the pressure required to lightly press or the speed required to lightly double-press. See [Adjust accessibility settings for the Camera Control](#).

## Use the Camera Control to open another app on iPhone

Instead of opening the camera, you can set the Camera Control ([on supported models](#)) to open the Magnifier app, the Code Scanner, or your favorite third-party camera app. You can also set the Camera Control to not open any app or feature when clicked.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, tap Camera Control, then choose one of the following options:
  - *Camera:* Opens Camera.
  - *Code Scanner:* Opens a QR code scanner.
  - *Magnifier:* Opens the Magnifier app.
  - *None:* No app opens when you click the Camera Control.

# Adjust the shutter volume on your iPhone camera

You can adjust the sound of the camera shutter, or mute it using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone.

## Change the volume of the shutter sound in Photo mode

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. [Open Control Center](#), then drag  up or down.
3. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to go back to Camera.

*Note:* The shutter doesn't make a sound when [Live Photos](#)  is turned on (except in some countries and regions).

## Mute the shutter sound

Mute the shutter sound using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone. To put iPhone in Silent mode, set the Ring/Silent switch so that the switch shows orange. To turn off Silent mode, set the switch back.

[Some iPhone models](#) have an Action button instead of a Ring/Silent switch. By default, you can press the Action button to turn Silent mode on or off. Or swipe down from the top-right corner to open Control Center, then tap .

*Note:* In some countries and regions, you can't mute the shutter sound.

# Adjust HDR camera settings on iPhone

*HDR* (high dynamic range) helps you get great shots in high-contrast situations. The iPhone camera takes several photos in rapid succession at different exposures and blends them together to bring more highlight and shadow detail to your photos.

By default, iPhone takes photos in HDR (for the rear camera and the front camera) when it's most effective.

[Supported models](#) record video in HDR to capture true-to-life color and contrast.

## Turn off automatic HDR

By default, iPhone automatically uses HDR when it's most effective. On some iPhone models, you can manually control HDR instead.

On iPhone 11 models, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 12, go to [Settings](#)  > Camera, then turn off Smart HDR. Then from the camera screen, tap HDR to turn it off or on.

## Turn HDR video off and on

On [supported models](#), iPhone records video in Dolby Vision HDR for true-to-life color and contrast. To turn off HDR video recording, go to [Settings](#)  > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video or HDR (depending on your model).

# Record videos with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to record videos<sup>Draft</sup> and QuickTake videos. Learn how to switch between video formats, change modes to take Cinematic, slow-motion, and time-lapse videos, and use Action mode to improve video stabilization.

*Note:* Video recording isn't available during a phone or FaceTime call.

## Record a video

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Video to switch to Video mode.
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to start recording. While recording, you can do the following:
  - Tap the white Shutter button to take a still photo.
  - Tap the Pause button to pause recording.
  - Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.
  - For a more precise zoom, touch and hold 1x, then drag the slider (on supported models).
  - [On supported models, use the Camera Control](#) to zoom in and out.
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to stop recording.

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can press the AirPod stem to record a video. See [Use AirPods or AirPods Pro with supported camera apps](#).

*Note:* For your security, a green dot appears at the top of the screen when Camera is in use. See [Control access to hardware features](#).

## Record video using the front and back cameras

On iPhoneX, iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, and iPhoneXXXX, you can record videos using the front and back cameras at the same time. This allows you to record yourself—and the action in front of you—simultaneously.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Video mode.
3. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap PIP.

You appear in the smaller, secondary frame. If you want to appear in the, primary frame, tap <SELFIE ICON> before tapping <NEW ICON> and then PIP.
4. Tap the screen to show the Record button, then tap the Record button to start capturing the video.

## Record in HD or 4K video

Depending on your iPhone model, you can record video in high-quality formats, like HD, 4K, HD (PAL), and 4K (PAL).

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Camera, then tap Record Video.

3. Select from the list of video formats and frame rates that your iPhone supports.

*Note:* Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

When Camera is open and Video mode is selected, tap the resolution and frame rate values that appear on-screen to make format adjustments.

Videos you record at faster frame rates can be played back at slower speeds in the Photos app. See [Trim video length, adjust slow motion, and edit audio](#).

*Note:* PAL is a television video format used in many countries and regions in Europe, Africa, Asia, and South America.

## Use Action mode

On [supported models](#), Action mode provides improved stabilization while recording in Video mode. Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, then tap Action  to turn Action mode on. Tap  on-screen to turn it off.



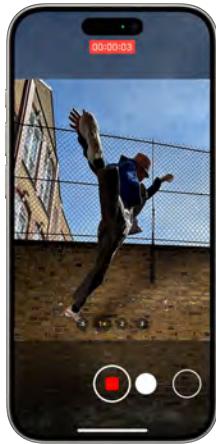
*Note:* Action mode works best in bright light. If you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings  > Camera, tap Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light. Action mode has a maximum capture resolution of 2.8K.

## Record a video while in Photo mode

QuickTake lets you record a video while in Photo mode instead of switching to Video mode. While recording, you can move the Record button into the lock position and take still photos at the same time.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording.
3. Slide the Shutter button to the right and let go over the lock for hands-free recording.
  - Both the Record and Shutter buttons appear below the frame—tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.
  - Swipe up to zoom in on your subject, or if you're recording hands-free, you can pinch out on the screen to zoom in.

4. Tap the Record button to stop recording.



**Tip:** Press and hold the volume up or volume down button to start recording a video in Photo mode.

On supported models, you can click and hold the Camera Control to record videos in full resolution.

Tap the thumbnail to view the video in the Photos app.

## Record a slow-motion video

When you record a video in Slo-mo mode, your video records as normal and you see the slow-motion effect when you play it back. You can also edit your video so that the slow-motion action starts and stops at a specific time.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe right on Photo or Video mode to select Slo-mo mode.

On supported models, you can tap to record in Slo-mo mode with the front camera.

3. To start recording, tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models).

You can tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.

4. To stop recording, tap the Record button, press either volume button, or click the Camera Control (on supported models).

To set a portion of the video to play in slow motion and the rest at regular speed, tap the video thumbnail, then tap Edit. Slide the vertical bars below the frame viewer to define the section you want to play back in slow motion.

Depending on your model, you can change the slow motion frame rate and resolution. To change slow-motion recording settings, go to Settings > Camera, then tap Record Slo-mo.

**Tip:** Use quick toggles to adjust the video resolution and frame rate while you record. See [Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate](#).

## Record a time-lapse video

Capture footage at selected intervals to create a time-lapse video of an experience over a period of time—such as a setting sun or traffic flowing.

1. Open Camera on your iPhone.
2. Swipe right on Photo or Video mode to select Time-lapse mode.

3. Set up your iPhone where you want to capture a scene in motion.
4. Tap the Record button or click the Camera Control (on supported models) to start recording; tap or click again to stop recording.

**Tip:** On iPhone 12 models and later, use a tripod to capture time-lapse videos with more detail and brightness when recording in low-light situations.

## Take spatial photos and record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), you can take spatial photos and record spatial videos and then relive the memories in three dimensions in the Photos app with Apple Vision Pro.

### Take spatial photos and record spatial videos

1. Open Camera .
2. Swipe right on Photo or Video mode to select Spatial mode, then rotate your iPhone to landscape orientation.
3. Tap  or  to take a spatial photo or record a spatial video.
4. For best results, do the following:
  - Keep your iPhone steady and level.
  - Frame your subjects 3 to 8 feet from the camera.
  - Use lighting that is even and bright.
5. Tap the Shutter button or Record button to take a photo or begin recording a video.

After you take a spatial photo or video, you can view it in three dimensions in the Photos app on your Apple Vision Pro. You can also view and share spatial photos and videos just like regular photos and videos on any of your other Apple devices. Spatial photos and videos sync to all your devices where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) and have [iCloud Photos turned on](#).

## Change sound recording options on iPhone

On iPhone 16 models and later, iPhone uses spatial audio to record video. Spatial Audio produces a more realistic and immersive audio recording that you can edit later in the Photos app; see [Edit Spatial Audio](#). Earlier iPhone models automatically record video in Stereo sound.

Depending on your iPhone model, you can choose to record in Spatial Audio, Stereo, or Mono. Go to Settings  > Camera > Record Sound, then choose one of the following:

- *Spatial Audio*: Audio playback is immersive from all directions on supported playback devices.
- *Stereo*: Separates audio playback between left and right ears.

- **Mono:** Audio playback is the same in both ears.

**Note:** On iPhone 16 and later, when you record video with either Spatial Audio or Stereo, wind noise is automatically reduced while recording. To change this setting, go to **Settings**  > **Camera** > **Record Sound**, then turn off **Wind Noise Reduction**.

With supported models of AirPods and AirPods Pro, you can use your AirPods as a microphone when you record videos. See [Use AirPods or AirPods Pro with supported camera apps](#).

## Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

On [supported models](#), you can use your iPhone camera to record and edit videos in ProRes, which offers higher color fidelity and less compression.

ProRes is available on all cameras, including the front camera. ProRes isn't supported in Cinematic, Time-lapse, or Slo-Mo mode.

**Note:** ProRes videos result in larger file sizes.

### Turn on ProRes video recording

1. Go to the **Settings**  app on iPhone.
2. Tap **Camera**, tap **Formats**, then turn on **Apple ProRes**.

Repeat these steps when you want to turn off ProRes video recording.

### Record a video with ProRes

1. Open **Camera**  on your iPhone.
2. Select **Video mode**, tap the format and resolution controls onscreen, then choose the color encoding option you want to use (HEVC, ProResLog, or ProResHDR depending on your model).
3. Tap the **Record** button, press either volume button, or click the **Camera Control** ([on supported models](#)) to start recording.

While recording with the rear camera, you can pinch to zoom in or out, tap .5x, 1x, 2x, 3x, and 5x (depending on your model) to switch between lenses, or touch and hold the lens chooser, then slide the dial for more precise zoom control.

4. Tap the **Record** button, press either volume button, or click the **Camera Control** ([on supported models](#)) to stop recording.

ProRes is available for recording up to 4K at 30 fps. iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max can record 4K at 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device. iPhone 16 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro Max can record 4K at 120 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device.

On iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 16 Pro models with 128 GB, recording to internal storage is only available at 1080p at 30 fps, but you can record 4K up to 60 fps on iPhone 15 Pro models and up to 120 fps on iPhone 16 and iPhone 16 Plus models when connected to a compatible external storage device. See the Apple Support article [About Apple ProRes on iPhone](#).

### Choose color encoding options for your ProRes recordings

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 16 Pro, and iPhone 16 Pro Max, you can choose between HDR, SDR, or Log color encoding when you record video in

1. Go to Settings  > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.
2. Tap ProRes Encoding, then tap HDR, SDR, or Log.

## Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. iPhone automatically identifies the subject of the video and keeps it in focus throughout the recording; if a new subject is identified, iPhone automatically transitions the point of focus. You can also manually adjust the point of focus while you record, or change it later in the Photos app.

Cinematic mode is available on [supported models](#).

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Select Cinematic mode. Before recording, you can make the following adjustments:
  - Tap <NEW ICON TO COME>, tap Aperture, then drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth-of-field effect.
  - Tap 2 or 3 next to 1x to zoom in (on [supported models](#)).
  - Tap the format and resolution controls onscreen to change the video resolution and frame rate (on [supported models](#)).
3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.
  - A yellow frame on the screen indicates the person in focus; a gray frame indicates a person is detected, but not in focus. Tap the gray box to change the focus; tap again to lock the focus on that person.
  - If there isn't a person in the video, tap anywhere on the screen to set the focus point.
  - Touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a single distance.
  - On iPhone 15 Pro models, iPhone 16 Pro models, iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, tap 2x to zoom, or pinch the iPhone screen to continuously zoom in and out.
4. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

**Tip:** On [supported models](#), you can use the Camera Control to adjust the depth-of-field effect. See [Select and adjust the Camera Control settings](#).

After you record a video in Cinematic mode, you can remove or change the cinematic effect. See [Edit Cinematic mode videos](#).

## Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

By default, iPhone records video at 30 frames per second (fps). Depending on your iPhone model, you can choose other frame rates and video resolution settings. Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

You can also use quick toggles to easily change video resolution and frame rates right on the camera screen. Draft

## Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate

In [Video mode](#), use quick toggles at the top of the screen to change the video resolution and frame rates available on your iPhone.

Tap the quick toggles in the top-right corner to switch between HD or 4K recording and 24, 25, 30, or 60 fps in Video mode, depending on your model.

[On supported models](#), quick toggles are available in [Cinematic mode](#) to switch between HD or 4K and 24, 25, or 30 fps.

## Adjust Auto FPS settings

iPhone can improve the video quality in low-light situations by automatically reducing the frame rate to 24 fps.

Go to [Settings](#) > Camera > Record Video, then, depending on your model, do one of the following:

- Tap Auto FPS, then apply Auto FPS to only 30-fps video or to both 30- and 60-fps video.
- Turn on Auto Low Light FPS.

## Turn stereo recording on and off

iPhone uses multiple microphones to achieve stereo sound.

To turn off stereo recording, go to [Settings](#) > Camera, then turn off Record Stereo Sound.

On iPhone 16 models and later, your camera records in Spatial Audio by default. To change recording settings, go to [Settings](#) > Camera > Record Sound, then tap Spatial Audio, Stereo, or Mono.

## Turn HDR video off and on

On [supported models](#), iPhone records video in HDR and shares HDR videos with devices using iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later; other devices receive an SDR version of the same video.

To turn off HDR recording, go to [Settings](#) > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

## Turn Lock Camera on and off

On [supported models](#), the Lock Camera setting prevents switching between cameras while recording video. Lock Camera is off by default.

To turn on Lock Camera, go to [Settings](#) > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock Camera.

## Turn Enhanced Stabilization off and on

On [supported models](#), the Enhanced Stabilization setting zooms in slightly to provide improved stabilization while recording in Video mode or Cinematic mode. Enhanced Stabilization is on by default.

To turn off Enhanced Stabilization, go to [Settings](#) > Camera > Record Video, then turn off Enhanced Stabilization.

## Turn Lock White Balance on and off

Draft  
You can lock the white balance when recording videos on your iPhone to improve accurate color capture based on lighting conditions.

To turn on Lock White Balance, go to Settings  > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock White Balance.

## Adjust Slo-mo recording frame rate

Slo-mo is set to record at 1080 HD at 240 fps from the back camera and 1080 HD at 120 fps from the front camera. To change the back camera to 120 fps, go to Settings  > Camera > Record Slo-mo.

## Adjust Cinematic mode resolution and frame rate

[On supported models](#), Cinematic video is set to record at 1080 HD at 30 fps. To switch to 4K at 24 fps or 4K at 30 fps, go to Settings  > Camera > Record Cinematic.

## Turn on Action Mode Lower Light

[On supported models](#), if you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings  > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light.

# Save camera settings on iPhone

You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset the next time you open Camera.

1. Go to Settings  > Camera > Preserve Settings.

2. Turn on any of the following:      Draft

- *Camera Mode*: Save the last camera mode you used, such as Portrait or Pano.

See [Switch between camera modes](#).

- *Photographic Style*: Save the last used Photographic Style (on [supported models](#)).

See [Use latest generation Photographic Styles](#).

- *Creative Controls*: Save the last settings you used for a light setting

See [Take a photo with a filter](#), [Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode](#), and [Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode](#).

- *Depth Control*: Save the last depth control setting you used in Photo, Portrait, and Cinematic modes.

See [Take a portrait in Photo mode](#), [Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode](#), and [Record videos in Cinematic mode](#).

- *Macro Control*: Preserve the Auto Macro setting rather than automatically using the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photos and videos (on [supported models](#)).

See [Control automatic macro switching](#).

- *Exposure Adjustment*: Save the exposure control setting (on iPhone 11 and later).

See [Adjust the camera's focus and exposure](#).

- *Night Mode*: Save the Night mode setting rather than reset to Auto (on [supported models](#)).

See [Take Night mode photos](#).

- *Portrait Zoom*: Save the Portrait mode zoom rather than reset to the default lens (this setting is on by default on [supported models](#)).

See [Take portraits](#).

- *Action Mode*: Keep the Action Mode setting turned on rather than reset to off (on [supported models](#)).

- *ProRAW & Resolution Control*: Save the Apple ProRAW setting (on [supported models](#)).

See [Take Apple ProRAW photos](#).

- *Apple ProRes*: Save the Apple ProRes setting (on [supported models](#)).

See [Record ProRes videos](#).

- *Live Photo*: Save the Live Photo setting. This setting is on by default.

See [Take Live Photos](#).

## Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens on iPhone

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 16 Pro, and iPhone 16 Pro Max, and iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, the default for the 1x Main and Fusion camera lens is 24 mm. You can add 28 mm and 35 mm as secondary lenses, and change which lens is the default Main or Fusion lens.

1. Go to Settings  > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then tap 24 MP.
2. Go to Settings  > Camera, then tap Main Camera or Fusion Camera (depending on your model).
3. Below Additional Lenses, turn on the lenses you want to add as additional Main or Fusion lenses.
4. Below Default Lens, tap the option you want to use for the default Main or Fusion lens.
5. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to exit Settings.

Open Camera after setting your Main or Fusion camera lens. Depending on your selection, the camera default lens will be either 1x (24 mm), 1.2x (28 mm), or 1.5x (35 mm). Tap the Main or Fusion camera lens to switch between the additional lenses you chose.

## Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Learn about advanced iPhone camera features that let you capture photos more quickly, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the camera frame.

### Change the Main camera resolution

On [supported models](#), the Main and Fusion camera resolution is set to 24 MP by default. You can switch between 12 MP, 24 MP, and 48 MP.

Go to Settings  > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then choose 12 MP or 24 MP.

To capture resolution at 48 MP, go to Settings  > Camera > Formats, then turn on Resolution Control or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 16 Pro, iPhone 16 Pro Max, and iPhoneXX/iPhoneXXX, after you turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control, you can choose the default format; tap Pro Default, then choose an option. Open Camera, then tap the toggle at the top of the screen to turn the format you chose on and off. Touch and hold the toggle to select a different format.

To learn about customizing the Main and Fusion camera, see [Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens](#).

### Turn View Outside the Frame off and on

On [supported models](#), the camera preview displays content outside the frame to show you what can be captured by using another lens in the camera system with a wider field of view. View Outside the Frame is on by default.

To turn off View Outside the Frame, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off View Outside the Frame.

### Turn Prioritize Faster Shooting off and on

The Prioritize Faster Shooting setting Draft modifies how images are processed—allowing you to capture more photos when you rapidly tap the Shutter button. Prioritize Faster Shooting is on by default.

To turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting.

## Turn Lens Correction off and on

On [supported models](#), the Lens Correction setting adjusts photos taken with the front camera or Ultra Wide camera for more natural-looking results. Lens Correction is on by default.

To turn off Lens Correction, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Lens Correction.

## Turn Scene Detection off and on

On iPhone 12 models, the Scene Detection setting can identify what you're taking a photo of and apply a tailored look to bring out the best qualities in the scene. Scene Detection is on by default.

To turn off Scene Detection, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Scene Detection.

## Don't save photos taken in Messages

When you take photos in the Messages app, they're automatically saved to your library in the Photos app. You can turn off this option. Go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Save Captures to Photo Library.

## Turn off lens cleaning hints

On supported models, iPhone detects if your lens is smudged and suggests you clean it for the clearest possible picture.

To turn off lens cleaning hints, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Lens Cleaning Hints.

# View, share, and print photos on iPhone

All photos and videos you take with your iPhone camera are saved in the Photos app. With [iCloud Photos](#) turned on, all new photos and videos are automatically uploaded and available in Photos on all your devices that are set up with iCloud Photos (with iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, or later).

*Note:* If Location Services is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security > Locations Services, photos and videos are tagged with location data that can be used by apps and photo-sharing websites. See [Control the location information you share](#).

## View your photos

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the thumbnail image in the lower-left corner.
3. Swipe left or right to see the photos you've taken recently.
4. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.
5. Tap All Photos to see all your photos and videos saved in the Photos app.

1. While viewing a photo on your iPhone, tap .
2. To share your photo, select an option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages.
3. To print your photo, swipe up to select Print from the list of actions.

See [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#).

See the Apple Support article [Use AirPrint to print from your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Upload photos and keep them up to date across devices

Use [iCloud Photos](#) to upload photos and videos from your iPhone to iCloud and then access them [on other devices](#) where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. iCloud Photos is useful if you want to keep your photos up to date across multiple devices or save space on your iPhone. To turn on iCloud Photos, go to Settings  > Apps > Photos, then turn on iCloud Photos.

# Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Use your iPhone camera to copy, share, look up, and translate text that appears within the camera frame. Camera also provides quick actions to easily call phone numbers, visit websites, convert currencies, and more, based on the text that appears in the frame.

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Position your iPhone so the text appears within the camera frame.
3. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap .
4. Touch and hold the text, then use the grab points to select specific text and perform any of the actions below:
  - *Copy*: Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
  - *Select All*: Select all the text within the frame.
  - *Look Up*: Show personalized web suggestions.
  - *Translate*: Translate text.
  - *Search Web*: Look up the selected text on the web.
  - *Share*: Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

**Tip:** Depending on the content, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, visit a website, start an email, convert currencies, and more.

5. Tap  to return to Camera.

To turn off Live Text on your iPhone camera, go to Settings  > Camera, then turn off Show Detected Text.

**Note:** Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See [the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

You can use your iPhone camera or the [Draft](#) Code Scanner to scan Quick Response (QR) codes for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more. The camera automatically detects and highlights a QR code.

## Use the camera to read a QR code

1. Open Camera  on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the QR code appears inside the camera frame.
3. Tap the notification that appears on the bottom of the screen to go to the relevant website or app.

**Tip:** On supported models you can use the Camera Control to open Code Scanner. See [Use the Camera Control to open another app](#).

## Scan a code from Control Center

1. Add the Scan Code control to Control Center (see [Customize controls](#)).
2. [Open Control Center](#), tap Scan Code, then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.

**Tip:** Tap the flashlight to add more light.

# Apps

## App Store

### Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app, you can discover new apps, featured stories, tips and tricks, in-app events, and offers.



**Note:** You need an internet connection and an [Apple Account](#) to use the App Store. The availability of the App Store and Apple Arcade varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Discover and find apps

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap any of the following: Draft

- *Today*: Browse featured stories, apps, and in-app events.
- *Games*: Find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.
- *Apps*: Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
- *Arcade*: Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
- *Search*: Tap , then enter what you're looking for. You can search by app name, category, developer, and more. You can also explore different categories or browse the suggested apps.

## Get information about an app

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an app's name or icon to see the following details:
  - Screenshots or previews
  - Ratings and reviews
  - In-app events and offers
  - Developer
  - File size
  - Compatibility with other Apple devices
  - Supported languages
  - Age rating
  - Game Center and Family Sharing support
  - Supported accessibility features
  - Privacy information

## Buy and download an app

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the app you want, then tap Get (if the app is free) or the price.  
If you see  instead of Get or the price, you've already purchased this app before. Tap  to download it again for free.
3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

Purchases are made with the [payment method](#) associated with your Apple Account.

You can find the app in the Recently Added category in App Library. While the app is downloading, a progress indicator appears on the app icon. See [Find and use your apps in App Library](#) and [Change where new apps get downloaded](#).

## Share and approve purchases with Family Sharing

If you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can view and download eligible apps purchased by other family members.

Draft  
Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases. Purchases made with Family Sharing may not be accessible after the family member leaves the family group.

The family organizer can review and approve eligible purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See [Turn on Ask to Buy](#).

## Use App Clips on iPhone

An app clip is a small part of an app that lets you do a task quickly, like rent a bike, pay for parking, or order food. You can discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, and Messages, or in the real world through NFC tags, QR codes, and App Clip Codes—unique markers that take you to specific App Clips.



### Get and use App Clips

1. Get App Clips from any of the following:
  - *App Clip Code or QR code*: [Scan the code](#) using the iPhone camera or Code Scanner in Control Center.
  - *NFC-integrated App Clip Code or NFC tag*: Hold iPhone near the NFC tag.
  - *Maps*: Tap the app clip link on the information card (for supported locations).
  - *Safari or Messages*: Tap the app clip link.

2. When the app clip appears on the screen, tap Open or Play.

In supported App Clips, you can [use Sign in with Apple](#), then [make a payment using Apple Pay](#).

With some App Clips, you can tap the banner at the top of the screen to see the full app.

### Find App Clips you used on iPhone

[Go to App Library](#), tap the search field at the top of the screen, then scroll down to the end of the alphabetical list.

### Remove App Clips

1. [Go to App Library](#), then tap the search field at the top of the screen.
2. Enter the name of the app clip, or scroll down to the App Clips at the bottom.
3. Touch and hold the app clip you want to delete, then tap Remove App Clip.

## Update apps from the App Store on iPhone

Apps installed by default on your iPhone are updated whenever you [update iOS](#). Apps that you download from the App Store app are automatically updated by default, but you can manually update an app.

### Turn off automatic app updates

Draft

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap App Store.
3. Turn off App Updates.

## Manually update apps

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your picture at the top right.
3. Scroll down, then tap Update next to apps you want to update, or tap Update All.

After an app is updated, it appears in the list of apps below Updated Recently.

## Install and manage fonts on iPhone

You can download fonts from the App Store app and use them in documents you create on iPhone.

### Install fonts

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Get an app containing fonts.
3. Open the app to install the fonts.

### Manage fonts

Go to Settings  > General, then tap Fonts.

## Share and send apps in the App Store on iPhone

When you find something special in the App Store, you can share a link to it or send it as a gift.

Note: Not all apps are available to send as gifts. See the Apple Support article [Gift apps, media, and more from Apple](#).

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the app you want to share or give to see its details.
3. Tap , then choose a sharing option or tap Gift App.

## See your purchases and subscriptions in the App Store on iPhone

You can view and change your subscriptions from Apple as well as subscriptions you purchased in apps from the App Store. You can also cancel subscriptions you no longer want.

### See your purchase history

Your purchase history includes free and <sup>Draft</sup> paid apps from the App Store as well as in-app purchases, subscriptions, music, videos, books, AppleCare+, and more.

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your picture at the top right, then tap Purchase History.

You may be asked to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. To narrow the results, enter the name, price, or order ID in the search field.
4. To change the search criteria, tap "Last 90 Days, Paid," then set any of the following:
  - Date range
  - Cost (free or paid)
  - Type
  - Family member (available if you're the organizer of a [Family Sharing group](#))

## View and redownload apps

1. Go to the App Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your picture at the top right, then tap Apps.
3. If you're part of a [Family Sharing group](#), tap My Apps or choose a family member.
4. Find the app you want to download (if it's still available in the App Store), then tap .

## Change or cancel a subscription

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Subscriptions.
3. Tap a subscription, then do any of the following:
  - Change the subscription.
  - Renew an expired subscription.
  - [Share an eligible subscription](#) with other family members in your Family Sharing group.
  - Turn on Renewal Receipts.
4. To cancel, tap Cancel Subscription or Cancel All Services

# Change settings and restrictions in the App Store on iPhone

In the App Store app , you can review and download purchases made by you or other family members. You can also set restrictions and customize your preferences for the App Store in the Settings app.

## Change your App Store settings

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, tap App Store, then adjust any of the following settings:

- *Location*: Allow App Store to use [your location](#) and show apps and ads relevant to you.
- *Siri*: Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use the App Store.
- *Search*: Allow content from the App Store to appear in [Search](#).
- *Cellular Data*: To allow App Store to use cellular, turn on Cellular Data. Adjust other settings for cellular data such as automatic downloads.
- *App Downloads*: Automatically install apps you purchased on your other devices.
- *App Updates*: Automatically download and install app updates.
- *In-App Content*: Automatically download in-app content in the background before the first time you open the app.
- *Video Autoplay*: Automatically play app preview videos.
- *In-App Ratings & Reviews*: Let apps ask for your feedback.
- *Offload Unused Apps*: Automatically remove unused apps. You can reinstall an app at any time if it's still available in the App Store.

## Set content restrictions and prevent in-app purchases

After you [turn on content and privacy restrictions](#), do the following:

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, then tap Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
4. Tap iTunes & App Store Purchases, then choose restrictions for installing or deleting apps and in-app purchases.
5. Tap App Store, Media, Web & Games, then choose age-appropriate restrictions such as the following:
  - *Apps*: Restrict apps by age ratings.
  - *App Clips*: Prevent App Clips from opening.

## Set Screen Time limits and App Store restrictions for kids

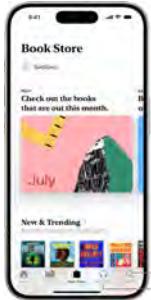
With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer—or another adult designated as parent/guardian—can set up parental controls for children or other members in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to customize restrictions for installing and deleting apps and in-app purchases. You can also set age restrictions so your child sees only age-appropriate apps. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for eligible purchases and free downloads.

See [Set up parental controls](#).

## Books

### Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

In the Books app, you can find today's bestsellers, view top charts, explore series, and browse lists curated by Apple Books editors. After you select a book or audiobook, you can read or listen to it right in the Books app.



1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Book Store or Audiobooks to browse titles, or tap Search to look for a specific title, author, series, or genre.

**Tip:** Tap Sections at the top of the screen to view titles in categories like Top Charts and Book Clubs, or genres like Biographies & Memoirs and Young Adults.

3. Tap a book cover to see more details, read a sample, listen to a preview, or mark as Want to Read.
4. Tap Buy to purchase a title, or tap Get to download a free title.

All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your [Apple Account](#).

You can allow books and audiobooks to download automatically over your cellular network when you aren't connected to Wi-Fi. Go to Settings  > Apps > Books, then turn on Automatic Downloads. Tap Downloads, then choose Always Allow, Ask If Over 200 MB, or Always Ask.

*Note:* The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

## Read books in the Books app on iPhone

In the Books app, you can view the books you're currently reading, want to read, book collections, and more.

- *Home:* Tap to access the books, audiobooks, and PDFs you're currently reading, get personalized suggestions for your next read, find books you've marked as want to read, and more. You can also set daily reading goals and keep track of the books you finish throughout the year.
- *Library:* Tap to see all of the books, audiobooks, series, samples, and PDFs you either got from the Book Store or manually added to Books. Tap <COLLECTIONS ICON TO COME> to see your library sorted into collections, such as Want to Read, My Samples, Audiobooks, Finished, or custom collections you created (see [Create a collection](#)).



Note: The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Read a book

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, tap the cover to open it, then do any of the following:
  - *Turn the page:* Tap the right margin or swipe right to left. To allow either the left or right margin to turn the page, go to [Settings](#)  > Apps > Books, then turn on Both Margins Advance.
  - *Go back to the previous page:* Tap the left margin or swipe left to right.
  - *Go back to previous reading location:* Tap the page, then tap the rounded arrow in the top-left corner of the page. Tap the rounded arrow again, but in the top-right corner, to go back to your current location.
  - *Go to a specific page or location:* Tap the page, tap , then tap Search Book. Enter a word, phrase, or page number, then tap a result.
  - *Use the table of contents:* Tap the page, tap , then tap Contents.

**Tip:** To quickly move through a book, touch and hold Contents, then drag your finger left or right; release your finger to go directly to that location in the book.

  - *Lock screen orientation:* Tap the page, tap , then tap  to lock the screen in horizontal or vertical orientation.
  - *Close a book:* Tap the page, then tap  in the top-right corner. Or swipe down from the top of the page (not available if vertical scrolling is on).



## Change text and page appearance

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.

2. Open a book, then tap  at the bottom of the page.

You may need to tap the page for  to appear.

3. Tap Themes & Settings, then do any of the following:

- *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.
- *Turn on vertical scrolling or change the page turn style:* Tap , then tap Curl, Fast Fade, or Scroll.  
To turn on vertical scrolling when viewing a PDF, manga, or other fixed layout document, tap  at the top of the screen, then turn on Vertical Scrolling.
- *Adjust the background mode:* Tap , then tap an option.
- *Adjust the display brightness:* Touch the brightness bar, then drag your finger in either direction.
- *Change the page theme:* Tap a page theme such as Quiet or Bold.
- *Change the font:* Tap Customize, then tap Font. Swipe up to view the font options. Tap a font name, such as Original or Palatino, to see a preview at the top of the screen. Tap Done to apply the font.
- *Make the font bold:* Tap Customize, tap the button next to Bold Text (green is on), then tap Done.
- *Customize spacing and justification:* Tap Customize, then below Accessibility & Layout Options, turn on Customize. Drag the sliders left or right to adjust line spacing, character spacing, word spacing, and margins. You can also turn Justify Text on or off. Tap Done to apply your changes.

4. Tap  or swipe down to close the menu.



**Note:** You can choose on which side of the screen the Menu button  appears. Go to Settings  > Apps > Books, then choose Left or Right below Reading Menu Position.

To undo text and layout customizations, tap , tap Customize, then tap Reset Theme.

## Bookmark a page

When you close a book, your place is saved automatically—you don't need to add a bookmark—but you can add bookmarks to pages you want to return to again.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap the page you want to bookmark.
3. Tap  at the bottom of the page.
4. Tap  to add a bookmark; tap it again to remove the bookmark.

To access all your bookmarks, tap  **Bookmarks & Highlights**, then tap **Bookmarks**.

## Share a text selection or book link

You can send text selections using **AirDrop**, Mail, or Messages, or you can add the selection to Notes. If the book is from the Book Store, a link to the book is included with the selection. (Sharing may not be available in all countries or regions.)

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Tap  on the menu items, then tap **Share**.
5. Tap Mail, Messages, or another app or service to share the selection.

You can also share a link to view the book in the Book Store. Tap , then tap how you want to share the link.

## Turn on Line Guide

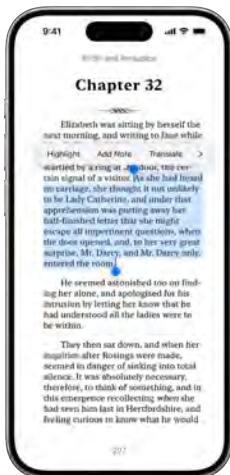
Use Line Guide to focus on individual lines of text as you read. When Line Guide is on, the rest of the page dims and the line you're reading becomes more visible.



1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap a page.
3. Tap  at the bottom of the page.
4. Tap  to turn on Line Guide, then do any of the following:
  - Tap the page above or below the line guide to move it up or down.
  - Tap the left or right page margin to move the line guide up or down (not available if vertical scrolling is on).
  - Touch and hold the line guide, then drag it to a new line on the page.
5. Tap  in the bottom-left corner of the page to adjust the background dim level or turn off Line Guide.

## Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

**Draft**  
You can highlight, underline, and take notes as you read books in the Books app, and then share your annotations with others.



Note: The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Highlight or underline text

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Tap **Highlight**.

To remove a highlight or underline, tap the text, then tap **Remove**.

5. To change the highlight color or switch to underline, tap the text, tap **Highlight**, then tap an option.

To see all of your highlights, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap **Highlights**. Tap a highlight to go to that location in the book.

## Add a note

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the text selection.
4. Tap **Add Note**, enter text, then tap <CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

To remove a note, tap the highlighted text, tap , tap **Remove**, then tap **Remove Note**.

To see all of your notes, tap the page, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap **Highlights**. Tap a note to go to that location in the book.

## Share highlights and notes

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.

3. Tap a highlight or note, tap  **Draft**, then tap Share.

**Tip:** To share multiple highlights or notes at the same time, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap , tap the items you want to share, then tap .

## Delete a note

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Tap a note, tap Remove, then choose Remove Note or Remove Highlight & Note.

**Tip:** To delete multiple notes or highlights at the same time, tap , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap , tap the items you want to delete, then tap .

# Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

You can access your books and audiobooks in the Books app  on your other Apple devices such as your iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro. You can also sync your reading position, highlights, notes, library collections, and more.

*Note:* The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Access your books on your other devices

To keep your Books content and information updated across your other Apple devices, sign in to the same [Apple Account](#) on each device, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download purchases made on other devices:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Books, then turn on Purchases from Other Devices.
- *Sync reading position, bookmarks, notes, and highlights:* Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Books.
- *Sync Home, Library, and collections:* Go to Settings > Apps > Books, then below Syncing, turn on Home and iCloud Drive.

## Access your books on your Mac

To see your books, audiobooks, and PDFs on your Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS 15 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps Syncing to iCloud Drive, then turn on Books.
- *macOS 13–14.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps syncing to iCloud Drive, then select Books. Click Back, then click Done.
- *macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.
- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then select Books.

To see your collections, bookmarks, notes, and highlights on your Mac, open Books, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later*: Choose Books > Settings, click General, then select “Collections, bookmarks, and highlights.”
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier*: Choose Books > Preferences, click General, then select “Collections, bookmarks, and highlights.”

## Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Use the Books app to listen to audiobooks on your iPhone.



### Play an audiobook

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to an audiobook, then tap the cover to start playing it.

3. While the audiobook is playing, <sup>Draft</sup> do any of the following:

- *Skip forward or back:* Tap or touch and hold the rounded arrows next to the Pause button. Or, use external controls such as headphones or car controls.
- Note:* To change the number of seconds to skip forward or back, go to Settings  > Apps > Books. Below Audiobooks, tap Skip Forward or Skip Back, then tap an option.
- *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the audiobook cover left or right.
- *Adjust the volume:* Drag the slider below the Pause button left or right.
- *Speed it up or slow it down:* Tap 1x in the lower-left corner, then drag the dial up or down to adjust the narration speed. Touch and hold the narration speed to reset it to 1x.
- *Set a sleep timer:* Tap , then choose a duration.
- *Play on a different device:* Tap , then choose an available device such as HomePod, Apple TV, or Bluetooth® speakers.
- *Go to a chapter:* Tap , then tap a chapter.

*Note:* Some audiobooks refer to chapters as *tracks*, or don't define chapters.

- *Switch to the audiobook mini-player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — at the top of the screen. Tap the mini-player at the bottom of the screen to go back to full screen.
- *Close the audiobook player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — at the top of the screen. Touch and hold the mini-player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, audiobooks play over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. To manage cellular data usage, see [View or change cellular data settings](#).

## Find supplemental PDFs

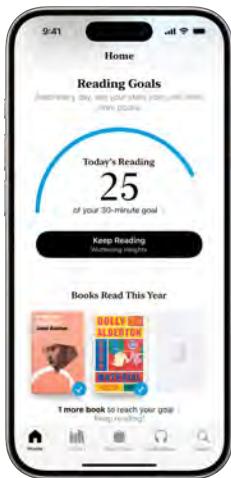
Some audiobooks come with supplemental PDFs.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap … below an audiobook cover.
3. Tap View PDF Content.

*Note:* The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Set reading goals in the Books app on iPhone

The Books app helps you keep track of how many minutes you read each day, and how many books and audiobooks you finish each year. You can customize your goals to spend more time reading, set new reading streaks, and receive encouragement to reach your goals.



Note: The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Change your daily reading goal

You can adjust your daily reading goal depending on how many minutes you want to read per day. If you don't customize your daily reading goal, it's set to 5 minutes per day.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap Adjust Goal, then slide the counter up or down to set the minutes per day that you want to read.

**Note:** To count PDFs toward your reading goal, go to Settings  > Apps > Books, then turn on Include PDFs below Reading Goals.

## Change your yearly reading goal

After you finish a book, the cover is displayed below Books Read This Year. The default yearly reading goal is three books per year, but you can increase or decrease your goal depending on how many books you want to finish.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap a book cover or a cover placeholder, then tap Adjust Goal.
4. Slide the counter up or down to set the books per year that you want to read, then tap Done.

**Tip:** You can change the status of a book in your library to finished. Tap  next to a book or audiobook cover, then tap Mark as Finished.

## Turn off coaching notifications

You receive encouragement and nudges from Books to help you reach your reading goals. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Coaching.
4. Tap Done.

## Turn off reading goals notifications<sup>Draft</sup>

Books sends you notifications when you achieve a reading goal or set a reading streak. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Goal Completion.
4. Tap Done.

## Turn off reading goals

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Books, then turn off Reading Goals.

When Reading Goals is turned off, the reading indicators in Home are hidden and you don't receive reading notifications.

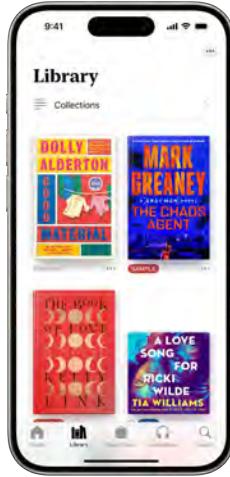
## Clear reading data

You can clear your reading data, such as time spent reading, reading goals, and reading streaks.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap Books, then tap Clear Reading Goals Data.

# Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

The books and audiobooks you purchase in the Books app are saved in your library and automatically sorted into collections, such as Audiobooks, Want to Read, and Finished.



*Note:* The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Create a collection

You can create your own collections to organize and personalize your library.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Library, tap <NEW COLLECTIONS ICON TO COME>, then tap New Collection.
3. Name the collection for example—*Beach Reads* or *Book Club*—then tap <NEW CHECKMARK ICON TO COME>.

## Add a book to a collection

You can add a book from your library or from the Book Store to the collections you create.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, then tap ... below the cover.

Tap Add to Collection, then tap the collection you want to add it to.

**Tip:** You can add the same book to multiple collections.

## Organize your books

You can change how the books in your library or a collection are displayed and sorted.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library or go to a collection.
3. Tap , then do either of the following:
  - *Change the book display:* Tap Grid or List.
  - *Sort your books:* Tap Recent, Title, Author, or Manual.

If you choose Manual, touch and hold a book cover, then drag it to a new position.

## Remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs

You can remove or hide books, audiobooks, and PDFs from Home, Library, and your library collections.

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book or audiobook you want to remove, then tap ... below the cover.
3. Tap Remove, then choose an option.

**Note:** If you choose Remove Download, the content and data associated with the title are no longer stored on your iPhone. To redownload the title, tap ..., then tap Download. If you choose Hide Book, the book won't appear in your library or collections. To unhide books and audiobooks, tap Home, tap your account icon, then tap Manage Hidden Purchases.

You can automatically remove downloads from your iPhone after you finish a book. Tap Library, then tap  at the top right of the screen. Tap Remove Downloads, then tap Automatically When Finished.

## Delete a collection

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap <NEW COLLECTIONS ICON TO COME>.

3. Swipe left on the collection you want to delete, then tap **Delete**.

*Note:* Deleting a collection doesn't delete the books or audiobooks in the collection; they're still in your library.

## Read PDF documents in the Books app on iPhone

You can open and save PDFs in the Books app that you receive in Mail, Messages, or other apps.

### Open a PDF you receive in another app in Books

1. Tap the PDF attachment to open it.
2. Tap , then tap Books from the list options.

### Share or print a PDF

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap  below the PDF.
3. Tap , then choose a share option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or tap Print.

### Mark up a PDF in Books

1. Go to the Books app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the PDF.
3. Tap the page, then tap  at the top of the screen to use the drawing and annotation tools.

*Note:* The availability of Apple Books varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Calculator

### Get started with Calculator on iPhone

In the Calculator app , you can solve math problems in basic or scientific mode, convert units, or handwrite problems and generate graphs using Math Notes.

### Choose the calculator for the task

# FPO

Do basic math, or switch to the scientific calculator where you can perform advanced calculations involving powers, roots, exponents, fractions, logarithms, trigonometry, and more. Tap , tap Basic or Scientific, then enter your expression.

## Convert units easily

# FPO

Miles to millimeters? Yen to euros? Change units of length, weight, power, pressure, speed, currency, and more with the unit conversion mode. Tap , turn on Convert, then tap  to choose the units or currencies.

## Visualize your expressions with graphs

# FPO

Evaluate expressions, assign variables, and plot graphs in Math Notes. Tap , tap Math Notes, then write an equation with two or three variables. Tap the equal sign of the equation to design your graph.

Want to learn more?

- [Use the basic calculator](#)
- [Use the scientific calculator](#)
- [Convert units or currency](#)
- [Solve math with Math Notes](#)
- [Work with graphs in Math Notes](#)
- [See previous calculations](#)

## Use the basic calculator on iPhone

You can perform arithmetic calculations with a basic calculator.

Ask Siri something like, "What's 18 percent of 225?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).



Switch to the basic calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Basic.

Clear digits, numbers, or the display

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Enter a digit or calculation.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Delete the last digit:* If you make a mistake when you enter a number, tap .
  - *Delete the entire number you last entered:* Tap the Clear (C) key.
  - *Delete the expression:* Tap the All Clear (AC) key, or touch and hold  or the Clear (C) key.

Switch to another mode

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then do one of the following:

- Access algebraic, exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric keys, and more: Tap Scientific. See [Use the scientific calculator](#).
- Solve handwritten math problems, evaluate expressions, and assign variables: Tap Math Notes, then tap . See [Solve math with Math Notes](#).
- Draw graphs: Tap Math Notes, tap , write an equation, then tap Insert Graph. See [Work with graphs in Math Notes](#).
- Instantly calculate unit or currency conversions: Turn on Convert. See [Convert units or currency](#).

**Note:** Calculator uses digits and operations from select numeric systems. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Copy a calculation result

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Enter a calculation, touch and hold the calculation result in the display, then tap Copy.
3. Paste the result somewhere else, such as in a note or message.

You can also copy [previous calculations](#).

## Repeat the last operation

Do one of the following after completing an operation:

- *Apply the last operation to the current result:* Tap the equal sign.

For example, if you enter “ $1 \times 2 =$ ”, your result is 2. Each time you tap the equal sign, the currently displayed answer is multiplied by 2, producing these results: 4, 8, 16, 32, and so on.

- *Apply the last operation to a new number:* Enter a new number, then tap the equal sign.

For example, if you enter “ $100 + 15\% =$ ”, the result is 115. Then, if you enter “ $150 =$ ”, the result is  $150 + 15\%$ , or 172.5.

# Use the scientific calculator on iPhone

You can use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions. You can also view complete expressions with parentheses, trigonometry, and multiple operations before tapping the equal sign for the final answer.

**Note:** The Calculator app uses the standard order of operations. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first.



## Switch to the scientific calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.

## Work with stored values

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.
3. As you calculate, you can do any of the following:
  - Add the value on the screen to memory: Tap .
  - Subtract the value on the screen from memory: Tap .
  - Recall the stored value in memory: Tap .
  - Clear the stored value from memory: Tap .

## Use exponential and logarithmic functions or notation

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Square a value: Enter a number, tap , then tap .
  - Cube a value: Enter a number, tap , then tap .
  - Raise a value to the power of y: Enter a base number, tap , enter the value of y, then tap .
  - Raise e to the power of x: Tap , enter the value of x, then tap .
  - Raise 10 to the power of x: Tap , enter the value of x, then tap .

**Tip:** Tap EE as a shortcut to use scientific notation, instead of tapping the x and  $10^x$  keys.

Use the keys just below those keys to get the inverse functions: the square root, cube root,  $y^{\text{th}}$  root, natural logarithm, and logarithm.

To access additional functions (such as  $y^x$  or powers of 2), tap the "2<sup>nd</sup>" key near the top left.

## Use trigonometric and hyperbolic functions Draft

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.
3. Find any of the following:
  - *Sine*: Tap sin, enter a number, then tap =.
  - *Cosine*: Tap cos, enter a number, then tap =.
  - *Tangent*: Tap tan, enter a number, then tap =.
  - *Hyperbolic sine*: Tap sinh, enter a number, then tap =.
  - *Hyperbolic cosine*: Tap cosh, enter a number, then tap =.
  - *Hyperbolic tangent*: Tap tanh, enter a number, then tap =.

To access the inverse of these functions (such as arcsine or arctangent), tap the "2<sup>nd</sup>" key near the top left.

## Use radians or degrees

The scientific calculator uses degrees by default.

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rad to switch to radians.

When you're using radians instead of degrees, the label Rad appears in the lower left of the display, and the Rad key becomes Deg.

To switch back to degrees, tap the Deg key.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait orientation), the Rad/Deg key is just above the ÷ key. When you hold it horizontally (in landscape orientation), the Rad/Deg key is near the bottom center.

## Generate a random number between 0 and 1

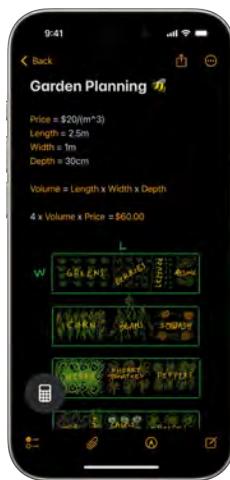
1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rand.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait orientation), the Rand key is just above . When you hold it horizontally (in landscape orientation), the Rand key is in the bottom left.

# Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

You can solve mathematical expressions, create and use variables, or graph equations—for example, when learning new concepts in class, doing day-to-day budgeting, planning an event, remodeling your home, and more.

*Note:* Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the [scientific calculator](#), and digits from select numeric systems. Learn more on the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Solve expressions

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap to start a new one.
4. Do any of the following:
  - Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
  - Tap , write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
  - Tap , write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each digit if you want a different operation.
5. Tap the equal sign to see what Math Notes understood in what you wrote. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:
  - *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions:* Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
  - *Ambiguous characters:* Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

See the Apple Support article [How to handle errors in Math Notes](#) to learn more.

Math Notes uses the standard order of operations in horizontal expressions. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first. In vertically stacked math, Math Notes evaluates expressions from top to bottom.

Math Notes automatically converts any units and currency used in expressions. You can also mix different systems—for example, 42 meters + 143 feet. Available units and currency match the Convert mode of the basic or scientific calculator. See [Convert units or currency](#).

## Update values

1. Go to the Calculator app on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Math Notes, then tap the note you want to update.

3. Do one of the following: Draft

- Erase the number, then enter a new value.
- Tap the number, then slide left and right to adjust the value using the scrubber that appears above the number.

Any graphs using the values automatically update. If the value was assigned to a variable, results or graphs of any equations using the variable automatically update as well.

## Use variables in expressions and equations

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a Math Note, or tap  to start a new one.
4. To declare a variable, type or write a letter or word to use as the variable, followed by an equal sign.
5. Type or write a value or expression after the equal sign to assign a value to the variable.
6. Type or write the variable name in an expression or an equation to use it.

**Note:** Math Notes reads entries from top left to bottom right. You must declare a variable (for example,  $x = 5$ ) before using it in an expression (such as  $x + 10 =$ ). Writing an expression without first declaring a variable produces an error. Variable names must contain characters only from the Latin alphabet. Variables can't be used in vertical math.

You can use equations with two variables to [create a graph](#).

## Show results automatically or as suggestions

You can choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter in Math Notes.

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap  to start a new one.
4. Enter text, or tap , then begin writing with your finger.
5. Tap , tap Math Results, then do one of the following:
  - *If you want problems to be solved:* Choose Insert Results. Answers appear automatically when you type or write a solvable math problem.
  - *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. When you type or write an equal sign or select a solvable math problem, a Solve button appears that, when tapped, inserts the answer.
  - *If you don't want any math results:* Choose Off. Answers don't appear when you type or write an equal sign after an expression.

## Use a light background

Math Notes uses a dark background by default, but you can switch to a light background instead.

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap to open a previous Math Note Draft, or tap  to start a new one.

3. Enter text, or tap  $\oplus$ , then begin writing with your finger.
4. Tap  $\mathbb{M}$ , then tap Math Notes.
5. Tap  $\cdots$ , then tap Use Light Background.

You can also add [show lines or grids in notes](#).

## Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

In Math Notes, you can insert a graph or overlay the graphs of multiple equations on the same two-dimensional grid or three-dimensional space to see how they relate.

**Note:** Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the [scientific calculator](#), and digits from select numeric systems. Learn more on the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



### Graph in two dimensions

1. Go to the Calculator app  $\mathbb{M}$  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  $\mathbb{M}$ , then tap Math Notes.
3. Type or write an equation with exactly two undefined variables, with one on each side of the equal sign.

You can include defined variables as well. For example, if you know  $a = 3$ , you can graph  $velocity = 0.5at^2$ . The graph's y-axis shows *velocity*, and the x-axis shows *t*.
4. As you write the equation, a menu appears. Tap Insert Graph, then, if asked, tap to assign a variable to the x-axis.

You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to create a new graph.

All graphs interpret the equations you enter as  $y = f(x)$ . The variable to the left of the equal sign graphs on the y-axis, and the other variable graphs on the x-axis.

### Graph in three dimensions

1. Go to the Calculator app  $\mathbb{M}$  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  $\mathbb{M}$ , then tap Math Notes.

3. Type or write an equation with exactly three undefined variables, with one on the left side of the equal sign.

For example,  $z = (y^3+x^3)/2$ .

4. As you write the equation, a menu appears. Tap Insert 3D Graph, then, if asked, tap to assign variables to axes.

5. Select the graph, then drag to inspect it from other angles.

You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to create a graph.

All graphs interpret the equations you enter as  $z = f(x,y)$ . The variable to the left of the equal sign graphs on the z-axis, and the other variables graph on the other two axes.

## Modify a graph

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Math Notes, then open a Math Note with a graph.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Change the shape of the function:* Edit your equation. The graph updates automatically.
  - *Reframe the graph:* Tap the graph, then swipe with two fingers to pan.
  - *Zoom in or out:* Tap the graph, then pinch open and closed.
  - *Resize the graph:* Tap the graph, then drag an edge or corner handle.
  - *Adjust the axes:* Tap the graph, tap , then swipe left or right on the numbers to make them larger or smaller or tap Equalize Axes.
  - *See coordinates:* Touch and hold the graphed function, then move your finger along the line to see each point's value for x, y, and (if three-dimensional) z.
  - *Center the origin:* Tap the graph, then tap Recenter. Or tap , then tap Center Origin.
  - *Duplicate the graph:* Tap the graph, then tap .
  - *Recolor the graph line or surface:* Tap the graph, tap , then tap the color dot to the left of the equation.

## Work with multiple graphs

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Math Notes.
3. Create a graph in [two](#) or [three](#) dimensions, as above.
4. Type or write another equation, then tap Insert Graph or Add to Existing Graph.

You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to add it to an existing graph.

5. Do any of the following:

- *Combine graphs on one grid:* Tap a graph, tap , then tap the equation in the list that you want to add to the graph. The  appears.
- *Hide a graph:* Tap the graph, tap , then tap  to uncheck it.

# Convert units or currency <sup>Draft</sup> in Calculator on iPhone

Turn on unit conversions to convert length, weight, currencies, and more while using the basic or scientific calculator.



1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. While using the [basic](#) or [scientific](#) calculator, tap , then turn on Convert.
3. Tap  and choose the units or currencies you want to convert from and to.

Swipe the categories at the top of the list to see others, such as Speed, Time, and Weight.

4. Enter a value in either field to see conversions as you type.
5. To reverse how the units are converted, tap .

You can also convert units and currencies in [Math Notes](#). For example, type or write "50 m in feet =" in a note.

## See previous calculations in Calculator on iPhone

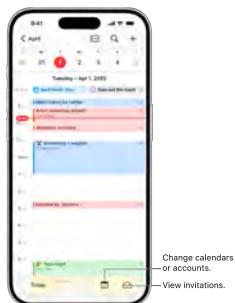
Keep track of previous calculations in the basic or scientific calculators, and copy results from them to use in Calculator or other apps.

1. Go to the Calculator app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then select Basic or Scientific.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Reload the calculation:* Tap the listing. The calculation appears where you left off earlier.
  - *Copy the answer:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Copy Expression or Copy Result.
  - *Delete the calculation:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Delete.

## Calendar

# Create and edit events Draft in Calendar on iPhone

Use the Calendar app to create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.



Ask Siri something like, "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Add an event

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap + at the top of the screen.
3. Enter the title of the event.
4. Tap Location or Video Call, then enter a physical location or tap FaceTime to enter a video link for a remote event.  
You can also copy a FaceTime link you created or received and paste it in the Location field. See [Create a link to a FaceTime call](#).
5. Enter the start and end times for the event, the travel time, invitees, attachments, and so on. (Swipe up, if necessary, to enter all the meeting information.)
6. Tap [X].

## Add an alert

You can set an alert to be reminded of an event beforehand.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
3. In the event details, tap Alert.
4. Choose when you want to be reminded.

For example, "At time of event," "5 minutes before," or another choice.

*Note:* If you add the address of the event's location, Calendar uses Apple Maps to look up locations, traffic conditions, and transit options to tell you when it's time to leave.

## Add an attachment

You can add an attachment to a calendar event to share with invitees.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
3. In the event details, tap Add attachment.

#### 4. Locate the file you want to attach.<sup>Draft</sup>

To find the file, you can enter its name in the search field, scroll, tap folders to open them, tap Browse to look in other locations (such as iCloud Drive), and so on. See [Modify files, folders, and find downloads in Files](#).

#### 5. Tap [X].

To remove the attachment, tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, swipe left over the attachment, then tap Remove.

## Find events in other apps

Siri can suggest events found in Mail, Messages, and Safari—such as flight reservations and hotel bookings—so you can add them easily in Calendar.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Siri, then turn on Show in App to allow Siri to suggest events found in other apps.

To allow Siri to make suggestions in other apps based on how you use Calendar, turn on Learn from this App.

## Copy and paste an event

You can copy an event and paste it to another date.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the event, then tap Copy.
3. On another date, touch and hold the time where you want to paste the event.

When you release, the New Event screen appears and the copied event appears below Title with the date and time where you want to paste the event.

**Tip:** You can also tap + at the top of the screen after copying an event.

4. Tap the copied event below Title.
5. Tap [X].

## Edit an event

You can change the time of an event and any of the other event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Quickly change the event time or duration:* In Day or Week view, touch and hold the event, then drag it to a new time, or adjust the grab points.
  - *Change event details:* Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right. In the event details, tap a setting to change it, or tap in a field to type new information.

## Delete an event

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap the event, then tap Delete Event at the bottom of the screen.

# Send invitations in <sup>Draft</sup>Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can send meeting and event invitations. iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and some CalDAV servers also let you send meeting invitations. (Not all calendar servers support every feature.)

## Before you begin

Before you can invite people to events you've scheduled, you need to make sure your calendar accounts are turned on.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts, select an account, then check to see if Calendar is turned on.

For more information about how to add calendars, see [Set up multiple calendars](#).

## Invite others to an event

You can invite people to an event you've scheduled.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top of the screen.
3. Tap Invitees.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a name from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, tap the name, then tap [X].
  - *You can also tap 

*Note:* In order to send a calendar invitation to a contact, the contact must have an email address. See [Add and use contact information](#).*

To make an invitation optional, tap Invitees, swipe left on the name or email address of the person you've invited, then tap Make Optional.

5. When you're finished, tap Done.

If you don't want to be notified when someone declines a meeting, go to Settings  > Apps > Calendar, then turn off Show Invitee Declines.

*Note:* With Microsoft Exchange and some other exchange servers, you can invite people to an event even if you're not the one who scheduled it.

## Schedule an event without blocking your schedule

You can add an event to your calendar without having the timeframe appear as busy to others who send you invitations.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Show As, then tap Free.

## Quickly email attendees

You can email all attendees of an event Draft, for example, to share event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an event that has attendees.
3. Tap Invitees, then tap .

## Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, reply to meeting and event invitations you've received.

### Reply to an event invitation

1. To respond to an event notification, tap it.  
Or, in Calendar, tap Inbox, then tap an invitation.
2. Tap your response—Accept, Maybe, or Decline.

To respond to an invitation you receive by email, tap the underlined text in the email, then tap Show in Calendar.

If you add comments to your response, your comments can be seen by the organizer but not by other attendees (comments may not be available for all calendars). To see events you declined, tap  at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Show Declined Events.

### Suggest a different meeting time

You can suggest a different time for a meeting invitation you've received.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the meeting, then tap Propose New Time.
3. Tap the time, then enter a new one.

Depending on the capabilities of your calendar server, the organizer will receive either a counter-proposal or an email with your suggestion.

## Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

You can view events across the span of a month, week, or multiple days, or view a list of upcoming events.



## See events in Month view

You can change your Month view to show event indicators or details.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. In Month view, tap the Month view icon, then do one of the following:
  - *Show a single bar indicator for the events on each day:* Tap Compact .
  - *Show a bar indicator for each event:* Tap Stacked .
  - *Show event titles:* Tap Details .

## View events across multiple days

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *View multiple days:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose Multi Day .
  - *View a weekly calendar:* In Month or Day view, rotate iPhone sideways.

## View events in a list

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *View a list of events for each day:* In Month view, tap the Month view icon and choose List .
  - *View a complete list of upcoming events:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose List .

# Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

You can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter the text you want to find in the search field.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "What's on my calendar for Friday?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).

# Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

In the Calendar app , you can add multiple accounts such as iCloud, Google, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo. You can change default settings to make it easier to create new events and to display your calendar in a way that works best for you. For example, you can choose the default calendar for new events, change the duration of new events, and more.

## Set up iCloud, Google, Exchange, or Yahoo calendar accounts

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts > Add Account.
4. Tap a service (iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Google, for example), then sign in.

## Add a CalDAV account

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Calendar Accounts > Add Account.
4. Tap Add Other Account, then tap CalDAV account.
5. Enter your server and account information.

**Note:** If you add an account that doesn't support Push notifications, you can set a Fetch schedule for updating your calendar from the account. Go to Settings  > Apps > Calendar. Tap Calendar Accounts, then tap Fetch New Data. Under Fetch, choose a schedule. If you choose Automatically, new data is downloaded when your iPhone is charging and connected to Wi-Fi.

## Choose a default calendar

If you have multiple calendars, you can choose a default calendar, and any new events you create are added to that calendar automatically.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Default Calendar, then select the calendar you want to use as your default calendar.

**Note:** You can always move an event to a different calendar after you create it. To find out more about using multiple calendars, see [Set up multiple calendars](#).

## Set default event settings

You can change default settings for calendar events, such as the duration for new events, whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event, and more.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.

- *Choose when to get alerts for different types of events:* Tap Default Alert Times, tap Birthdays, Events, or All-Day Events, then choose an option.
- *Choose whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event:* Tap Default Alert Times, then turn Time to Leave on or off.
- *Change the default duration for new events:* Tap Duration for New Events, then choose a length of time.
- *Choose whether Calendar suggests a location when you create a new event:* Turn Location Suggestions on or off.

## Change how your calendar is displayed

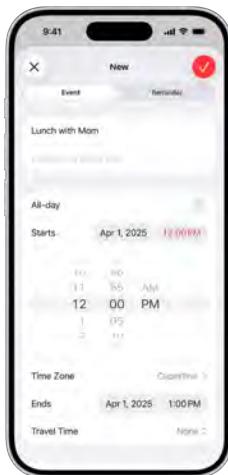
You can customize the way your calendar is displayed to help highlight the information that's most important to you. For example, you can choose which day you want to start the week with, display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Hijri calendar (alongside the Gregorian calendar), and more.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Hijri calendar:* Tap Alternate Calendars, then choose a calendar.
  - *Display the week number next to every week of the year:* Turn on Week Numbers.
  - *Show the current day as the first day in Week view:* Turn on Week View Starts On Today.
  - *Choose a different day to start the week:* Tap Start Week On, then tap a day.

You can allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Calendar. Go to Settings  > Apps > Calendar, tap Siri, then turn on Learn from this App. You can also allow suggestions and content from Calendar to appear in [Search](#), [widgets](#), and as [notifications](#).

## Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, events appear according to the time zone of your current location. However, you can schedule an event in a different time zone from the one currently shown in Calendar. You can also set your calendar to always display a specific time zone, even if you travel to a different location.



## Change the time zone for a new event

You can create and edit events in Calendar and change the time zone of the event—even if it's different from the time zone you're currently in. For example, if you live in New York, you can create or edit an event and schedule it according to the time zone in another location—like Chicago.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen.
3. Add the event details (title, location, travel time, attachments, and so on).
4. Enter the start and end times for the event, then tap Time Zone.
5. Search for a location, tap it, then tap [X].

*Note:* You can edit the time zone of the event later if you need to.

## Always display your calendar in a specific time zone

You can override the default time zone setting so you can display Calendar in the time zone of your choice. This can be helpful if you're working remotely and need to keep track of the time when scheduling meetings with your colleagues in a different time zone. For example, if you live in San Francisco, but your job is based out of Boston, you can override the time zone of your current location and view your calendar events according to the time zone in Boston.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Time Zone Override, then turn on Time Zone Override.
4. Tap Time Zone, search for a location (like Boston, for example), then tap the location.

Events created before you turn on Time Zone Override appear in the new time zone, but also show the original time zone used when they were created.

*Note:* Time Zone Override only changes the time zone shown in the Calendar app.

# Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

You can customize the notifications that let you know about upcoming calendar events, invitations, and more. You can also make sure your events and other calendar information are kept up to date on all your devices.

## Customize Calendar notifications Draft

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Turn on Allow Notifications.
4. Choose how and where you want the notifications to appear—for example, on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, as banners at the top of the screen, with an alert sound, and so on.

## Turn on customized notifications for specific calendar events

After customizing Calendar notifications, you can choose whether you want them to appear for specific occasions—like upcoming events or invitee responses, for example.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Scroll down and tap Customize Notifications.
4. Turn the specific customized notifications on or off.

## Keep your calendar up to date across your devices

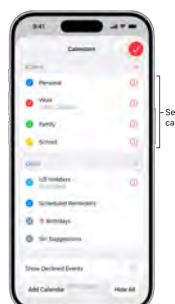
You can use iCloud to keep your calendar information up to date on all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.
4. Tap iCloud Calendar and turn on Use on this iPhone.

If you don't want to use iCloud for your calendar, you can sync your calendar information between your iPhone and your computer. See [Transfer files between devices](#).

## Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events. You can keep track of all your events and appointments in one calendar, but additional calendars are easy to set up and a great way to stay organized.



### Set up a calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen, then tap Add Calendar.

3. Do one of the following: Draft

- *Create an iCloud calendar:* Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the calendar, then choose a color for it.
- *Subscribe to an external, read-only calendar:* Tap Add Subscription Calendar, enter the URL of the .ics file you want to subscribe to (and any other required server information), then click Subscribe.
- *Add a Holiday calendar:* Tap Add Holiday Calendar, tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap [X].

See [Use the Holidays calendar](#).

You can also subscribe to an iCalendar (.ics) calendar by tapping a link to it.

## Unsubscribe from a calendar

You can unsubscribe from a calendar you're subscribed to. When you unsubscribe, you can also report the calendar as junk.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  next to the calendar you want to unsubscribe from.
4. Tap Unsubscribe, then Tap Unsubscribe or Unsubscribe and Report Junk.

*Note:* When you tap Unsubscribe and Report Junk, the calendar is reported to Apple as a suspected junk subscription.

## See multiple calendars at once

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:
  - Select the calendars you want to view.
  - Tap US Holidays to include national holidays with your events.
  - Tap Birthdays to include birthdays from Contacts with your events.

## Turn on calendar event alerts

You can turn on event notifications for calendars you create or subscribe to.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  next to a calendar.
4. Turn Event Alerts on or off.
5. Tap [X].

## Change a calendar's color

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  next to the calendar, then choose a color.
4. Tap [X].

For some calendar accounts, such as Google, the color is set by the server.

Draft

## Move an event to another calendar<sup>Draft</sup>

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, tap Calendar, then select a calendar to move the event to.

# Use reminders in Calendar on iPhone

You can view, create, complete, and edit reminders from the Reminders app right in Calendar.

## Show reminders

You can show scheduled reminders you added to the Reminders app  in Calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select Scheduled Reminders.
4. Tap [X].

Reminders scheduled as all day are shown in the all-day section at the top of the calendar. Reminders scheduled at a specific time appear at that time in the full-day schedule.

## Create reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Reminder, then enter a title.
4. To choose a date for the reminder, tap Date.
5. Optionally, turn on Time and choose a specific time for the reminder.

You can also add other information—like images, notes, or a priority level to a reminder. See [Add details](#).

**Note:** You can select a specific reminders list to add new scheduled reminders to. If you don't select a list, new reminders are added to the default list you chose for Reminders. See [Change your Reminders settings](#).

## Complete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the circle next to a reminder's name.

Complete reminders are dimmed. Deselect the circle next to a reminder to mark it as incomplete.

**Note:** If you set a scheduled reminder to repeat, future instances are dimmed and can only be marked complete after the most current instance is marked complete.

## Hide reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Deselect Scheduled Reminders.

Removing reminders from Calendar doesn't delete the reminders from the Reminders app.

## Edit or delete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a reminder, then tap Edit to edit the details or Delete Reminder to delete.

Deleted reminders go to the Recently Deleted list in Reminders for 30 days before being permanently deleted.

# Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

In the Calendar app, the Holidays calendar displays holidays based on the region set on your iPhone.

*Note:* The Holidays calendar is a subscription calendar. You can't add or delete holidays, because subscription calendars can be modified only by the calendar provider.

## Show or hide holidays

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select or deselect US Holidays (or the holiday calendar for your country or region).

## Add a holiday calendar from a different region

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Calendar, then tap Add Holiday Calendar.
4. Tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap [X].

To change settings, like notification alerts or the name of a holiday calendar you've subscribed to, see [Set up multiple calendars](#).

# Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

In the Calendar app, you can share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users.

When you share a calendar, others can see it, and you can let them add or change events. You can also share a read-only version that anyone can view but not change.

## Create an iCloud calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Calendar.
4. Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the new calendar, then tap [X].

If iCloud isn't your default calendar, tap Accounts, then tap iCloud. See [Change your Calendar settings](#).

You can share a calendar with one or more people in iCloud. Those you invite receive an invitation to join the calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
4. Tap Add Person, then enter a name or email address, or tap  to browse your contacts.

*Note: Your contacts must have an email address to share an iCloud calendar. See [Add and use contact information](#).*

5. Tap Add, then tap [X].

## Change a person's access to a shared calendar

After you invite a person to share your calendar, you can turn on or off their ability to edit the calendar, or stop sharing the calendar with that person.

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap  next to the shared calendar, then tap the person's name.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Turn Allow Editing on or off.
  - Tap Stop Sharing.

## Turn off notifications for shared calendars

When someone modifies a calendar you're sharing, you're notified of the change. You can turn off notifications, if you don't want to receive them.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Calendar.
3. Tap Customize Notifications, then turn off Shared Calendar Changes.

## Share a read-only calendar with anyone

1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  then tap  next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
3. Turn on Public Calendar, then tap Share Link to copy or send the URL for your calendar.
4. Choose a method for sending the URL—Messages, Mail, and so on.

Anyone you send the URL to can use it to subscribe to the calendar using a compatible app, such as Calendar for macOS.

## Delete a calendar

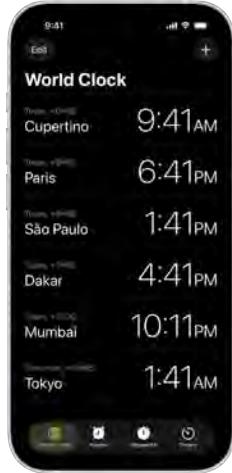
1. Go to the Calendar app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  next to the iCloud calendar you want to delete.
4. Tap Delete Calendar at the bottom of the list.

# Clock

## See the time worldwide in Clock on iPhone

You can see the local time in time zones around the world.

Ask Siri something like: "What time is it?" or "What time is it in London?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).



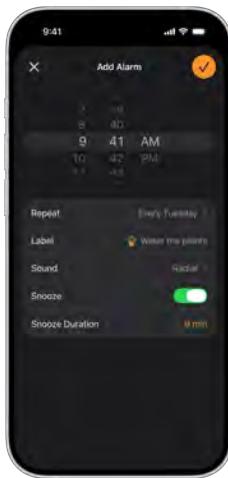
1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap World Clock.
3. To manage your list of cities, do any of the following:
  - *Add a city:* Tap , then choose a city.
  - *Delete a city:* Tap Edit, then tap . Tap 
  - *Reorder the cities:* Tap Edit, then drag  up or down.
4. When you're finished, tap .

## Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

You can turn your iPhone into an alarm clock, or simply ask Siri to set one for you. Alarms can be set for any time and repeated on specific days of the week. You can also adjust how long the snooze lasts.

Ask Siri something like, "Set an alarm for 7 a.m." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

**Note:** You can also set up a wake up alarm as part of a full [sleep schedule](#) (including bedtimes, wake up times, and more) in the Health app. If you don't want to set up a sleep schedule, you can set a regular alarm in Clock for the time you want to wake up.



## Set an alarm

You can set alarms for any time, including one for the time you want to wake up. Any alarm you set up in Clock is unrelated to a sleep schedule.

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap .
3. Set the time, then choose any of the following options:
  - *Repeat*: Choose the days of the week you want the alarm to repeat.
  - *Label*: Give the alarm a name, like "Water the plants."
  - *Sound*: Choose a vibration, song, or ringtone.
  - *Snooze*: Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm.
  - *Snooze Duration*: Choose how long to pause the alarm.
4. Tap .

To change the alarm, tap the alarm time. Or tap Edit at the top left, then tap the alarm time.

## Change the alarm's volume

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Under Ringtone and Alerts, drag the volume slider.

**Tip:** To use the volume buttons on your device to change the alarm volume, turn on Change with Buttons.

Your alarm sounds even when you:

- Turn on [Silent mode](#).
- Turn on Do Not Disturb (or another [Focus](#)).
- Connect headphones to your iPhone. The alarm plays at a set volume through both the built-in speakers on your iPhone as well as your headphones.

## Turn off an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.

3. Tap the button next to the alarm time.  
Draft

## Remove an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.
3. Swipe left on the alarm, then tap .

# Change your wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

You can make changes to your wake up alarm if you've set up a [sleep schedule](#) in the Health app.

## Change your wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Change only your wake up time:* Drag .
  - *Shift your sleep schedule:* Drag to rotate the arc between  and . (Your bedtime and wake up time change simultaneously, and the sleep duration remains unchanged.)



4. Scroll down to Alarm Options, turn the alarm on, then change any of the following options:
  - *Sounds & Haptics:* Tap to choose a vibration or ringtone.
  - *Alarm volume:* Drag the slider.
  - *Snooze:* Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm.
  - *Snooze Duration:* Choose how long to pause the alarm.
5. Tap , then tap Change Next Alarm Only.

*Note:* If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

To make changes to your sleep schedule that extend beyond your next wake up alarm, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health. (See [Add or change sleep schedules](#).)

## Turn off your next wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then turn off Alarm.  
Draft

4. Tap , then tap Change Next Alarm Draft Only.

*Note:* If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

## Remove the wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Change, then tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health.
3. Turn off Sleep Schedule.

In the Health app, you can [delete a sleep schedule](#) or [turn off all sleep schedules](#).

## Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

You can use the stopwatch to measure the duration of an event.



1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Stopwatch.

To switch between the digital and analog faces, swipe the stopwatch.

3. Tap Start.

The timing continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

4. To record a lap or split, tap Lap.
5. Tap Stop to record the final time.
6. Tap Reset to clear the stopwatch.

## Set timers in Clock on iPhone

You can set timers to count down from specified times.

Ask Siri something like: "Set the timer for 3 minutes." [Learn how to use Siri](#).



## Set a custom timer

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then set a duration of time.
3. Choose any of the following options:
  - *Label:* Give the timer a name, like "Egg timer."
  - *When Timer Ends:* Choose a sound to play when the timer ends.
4. Tap Start.

*Note:* The timer continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

When you set a custom timer, it appears below Recent—so you can start the same timer whenever you want.

## Set a timer to stop playing audio or video

If you want to stop playing audio or video after a specific amount of time, you can set the timer to stop the playback—for example, when you fall asleep while listening to the radio.

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. [Set a custom timer](#), as above.
3. Tap When Timer Ends, then tap Stop Playing at the bottom of the list of sounds.
4. Tap Set, then tap Start.

## Set multiple timers

After you start a custom timer, you can add more timers to keep track of different tasks at the same time.

1. Go to the Clock app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then Tap  at the top right.

3. Then do one of the following: Draft

- *Add a custom timer:* Set a duration of time, add a label or sound.
- *Add a preset timer:* Swipe left below Presets, then tap a preset duration of time (like 1, 5, or 10 minutes)..
- *Add a recent timer:* Tap ● next to a timer you've recently set.

Tap the timer to edit the label and sound.

### Stop, pause, or remove a timer

When a timer ends, you get a notification at the top of your screen, no matter which app you're using. Tap ● to clear the notification, or tap ⌂ if you want the timer to run again. You can also tap Repeat or Stop from the Lock Screen.

You can also turn off a timer before it ends.

1. Go to the Clock app ☰ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then do any of the following:
  - *Pause a timer:* Tap ⌂ next to the timer to stop it momentarily. Tap ● to continue counting down.
  - *Remove a timer:* Swipe left, then tap ●.
  - *Remove several timers:* Tap Edit, tap ●.

From your Lock Screen, you can swipe left on a timer, then tap Clear.

## Compass

### Use the compass on iPhone

The Compass app shows you the direction iPhone is pointing in, your current location, and the elevation.



*Note:* Your coordinates and elevation may not be available in certain countries or regions.

### See your bearings, coordinates, and elevation

Your bearings, coordinates, and elevation are shown at the bottom of the screen.

1. Go to the Compass app ☰ on your iPhone.  
Draft

2. For accurate bearings, hold iPhone <sup>Draft</sup> flat to align the crosshairs at the center of the compass.

3. To lock your current direction, tap the compass dial.

A red band appears when you're off course.

To open your location in Maps, tap the coordinates at the bottom of the screen.

## Allow Compass to access your location

If Compass doesn't see your location, make sure you've turned on Location Services.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

2. Tap Compass, then tap While Using the App.

For more information, see [Control the location information you share](#).

**Important:** The accuracy of the compass can be affected by magnetic or environmental interference; even the magnets in the iPhone EarPods can cause a deviation. Use the digital compass only for basic navigation assistance. Don't rely on it to determine precise location, proximity, distance, or direction.

# Contacts

## Add and use contact information on iPhone

You can use the Contacts app to create, find, share, and delete contacts.

Say something like, "Sarah Milos is my sister." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Create a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap .

Siri also suggests new contacts based on your use of other apps, such as email you receive in Mail and invitations you receive in Calendar. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts > Siri, then turn off Show Contact Suggestions.)

Based on the way you use Contacts, Siri also provides contact information suggestions in other apps. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts > Siri, then turn off "Learn from this App.") See [Siri Suggestions](#).

### Find a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the search field at the bottom of the contacts list, then enter a name, address, phone number, or other contact information.

You can also search your contacts using Search (see [Search with Spotlight](#)).

### Share a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a contact, tap Share Contact, then choose the fields you want to share.

3. Tap  then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. To start a message, make a phone call or a FaceTime call, or compose an email, tap a button below the contact's name.

To change the default phone number or email address for a contact method, touch and hold the button for that method below the contact's name, then tap a selection in the list.

## Delete a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the contact's card, then tap Edit.
3. Scroll down, then tap Delete Contact.

# Edit contacts on iPhone

Assign a photo to a contact, add a pronunciation and pronouns, change a label, add a birthday, and more.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Enter or update the contact's information.
4. When you're finished, tap .

On [models with Dual SIM](#), when you call or text a contact, iPhone uses the same line you used for your previous communication with this contact by default. To choose a preferred line for phone calls and SMS/MMS message conversations, select the contact, tap default (below the contact's name), then choose a line.

To change how your contacts are sorted and displayed, go to [Settings](#)  > Apps > Contacts.

# Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

iPhone uses your [Apple Account](#) to create your contact card, called *My Card*, in the Contacts app. You can also add or edit details—including your name, address, phone number, and birthday, as well as the Contact Poster, which you can share with people when you call or send a message to them.

## Complete or edit My Card

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.

If you don't see My Card, tap  and enter your information, then return to the contact list, touch and hold your contact, and tap Make this My Card.
3. Enter your contact information.

Contacts suggests addresses and phone numbers to help you.

**Tip:** You can also teach Siri how to pronounce your name. See [Tell Siri how to say your name](#).

## Add or edit your home address

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Add Address and add your address.
4. Tap the label that appears to the left of the address and select Home.

You can use AutoFill in Safari to automatically fill in your address for things like online shopping or online forms. When you edit your My Card, your AutoFill information automatically updates. See [Fill in personal information](#).

## Add or edit your photo and poster

You can set a photo and poster to automatically appear when you call or send a message to others.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.
3. Tap your contact photo, then choose and customize your photo and poster.

## Share your name and contact image

You can choose to automatically share your updated name, photo, and poster with people in your contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, tap Edit, then tap your contact photo.
3. Turn on Name & Photo Sharing to start sharing your contact photo and poster with others. (You may need to scroll down.)

You can share automatically with Contacts Only, or select Always Ask to be prompted before your name, photo, and poster are shared with anyone.

## Add or edit contact pronouns



You can add or edit your pronouns or another contact's pronouns in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap My Card at the top to add your <sup>Draft</sup> pronouns, or select another contact to add theirs.
3. Tap Edit, then tap "add pronouns."
4. Select your language and add the correct pronouns.

You can also add pronouns in other languages by tapping Add Pronouns again.

5. Tap Add.

**Note:** When you share your contact information through Contacts or NameDrop, by default your pronouns aren't shared. When you're sharing another contact's information, their pronouns are never shared.

## Create or edit your Medical ID

A Medical ID provides information about you that may be important in an emergency, like allergies, medical conditions, and your emergency contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, then tap Edit.
3. Scroll down, then tap Create Medical ID or Edit Medical ID.

# Add or remove accounts in Contacts on iPhone

In the Contacts app, you can add multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo. You can choose a default account, set up LDAP or CardDAV accounts, show or hide accounts, and delete accounts.

## Add your iCloud contacts

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

## Add your contacts from other accounts

You can use the Contacts app to manage your contacts in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Choose an account, sign in to it, then turn on Contacts.

**Note:** If you add an account that doesn't support Push notifications, you can set a Fetch schedule for updating your contacts from the account. Go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts, tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Fetch New Data. Under Fetch, choose a schedule. If you choose Automatically, new data is downloaded when your iPhone is charging and connected to Wi-Fi.

## Add contacts from contacts provider apps

Draft  
You can allow third-party apps to add contacts to the Contacts app. The contacts are managed by the third-party app and can't be edited in Contacts.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Providers, then turn on the option for an app.

## Choose your default account

You can select a default account where new contacts are automatically added.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Default Account, then tap the account you want to make your default.

## Set up an LDAP or CardDAV account to access business or school directories

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Tap Add Other Account, then tap Add LDAP Account or CardDAV Account.
5. Enter the account information.

## Remove a contact account

When you remove an account, the contacts in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The contacts remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

- *Turn off iCloud contacts:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn off Contacts.

You can choose to keep or delete the previously synced iCloud contacts on your iPhone.

- *Temporarily stop using an account:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Contacts.

To view the contacts in that account on your iPhone again, turn on Contacts.

- *Delete an account:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then tap Delete Account.

If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

## Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

You can use NameDrop to quickly share new contact information with a nearby iPhone or Apple Watch (Apple Watch Ultra, Apple Watch Series 7 and later, and Apple Watch SE 2nd generation).



**Note:** NameDrop only works for sending new contact information, not updating an existing contact.

## Use NameDrop on iPhone

1. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.
2. Continue holding your devices near each other until NameDrop appears on both screens.
3. Choose to share your contact card and receive the other person's, or to only receive the other person's.

If you're sharing your contact card, tap , select the fields you want to include, then tap Save. The same fields will be selected by default next the time you use NameDrop.

To cancel, move the two devices away from each other or lock your iPhone before the NameDrop transfer completes.

## Turn off NameDrop on iPhone

NameDrop is on by default. To turn off NameDrop (and other Bring Devices Together features), go to Settings  > General > AirDrop, then turn off Bring Devices Together.

# Use contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

In the Phone app on iPhone, you can call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app.

## Add a contact to Favorites

You can add VIP contacts to your Favorites list for quick dialing.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, scroll down, then tap Add to Favorites.

Calls from these contacts bypass Do Not Disturb (see [Turn on or schedule a Focus](#)).

## Add a recent caller to Contacts

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Recents, then tap  next to the number.
3. Tap Create New Contact, then enter the contact's information.

To add a recent caller to an existing contact, tap Add to Existing Contact, then choose a contact.

## Automate dialing an extension or passcode

If the number you're calling requires dialing an extension, iPhone can enter it for you. When editing a contact's phone number, tap `+*#`, then do any of the following:

- Tap Pause to enter a two-second pause (a two-second pause is represented as a comma in the phone number).
- Tap Wait to stop dialing until you tap Dial again (wait-to-dial is represented as a semicolon in the phone number).

## Get rid of duplicate contacts on iPhone

When you have contacts from multiple sources, you might have multiple entries for the same person. In the Contacts app, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list. Linked contact cards are displayed as a single *unified contact*.

### Resolve duplicate contacts

If you have more than one contact card with the same first and last name, you can merge the duplicate contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Below My Card, tap View Duplicates.
3. Tap individual contacts to review and merge them, or tap Merge All to merge all duplicate contacts.

### Link contacts manually

If two entries for the same person aren't linked automatically, you can unify them manually.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap one of the contacts, tap Edit, then tap Link Contacts.
3. Choose the other contact entry to link to, then tap Link.

When you link contacts with different first or last names, the names on the individual cards don't change, but only one name appears on the unified card. To choose which name appears on the unified card, tap one of the linked cards, tap the contact's name on that card, then tap Use This Name For Unified Card.

*Note:* When you link contacts, those contacts aren't merged. If you change or add information in a unified contact, the changes are copied to each source account where that information already exists.

## Sync contacts across devices on iPhone

To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#), you can use iCloud.



1. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud.

2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Alternatively, you can sync the information between iPhone and your Mac or Windows device to keep the information up to date across iPhone and your computer. See [Transfer files between devices](#).

If you use iCloud for Contacts, your contacts are kept up to date automatically, and no options appear for syncing them with your computer.

## Import contacts on iPhone

You can import contacts from a SIM card, vCard, or from a directory.

### Import contacts from a SIM card (GSM)

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Contacts.
3. Tap Import SIM Contacts.

### Import contacts from a vCard

Tap a .vcf attachment in an email or message.

### Add a contact from a directory

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [X], then tap the GAL, CardDAV, or LDAP directory you want to search.
3. Enter your search.
4. Tap the person's name to save their information to your contacts.

## Export contacts on iPhone

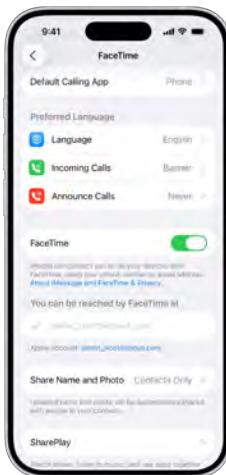
You can export some or all of your contacts to another device or app.

1. Go to the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [X] at the top left.
3. Touch and hold an existing list (or create a new list by tapping Add List).
4. Tap Export, select the fields you want to include, then tap .
5. Choose a method to send or save the exported contact cards, such as Messages or Mail.

## FaceTime

## Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Learn how to use the FaceTime app  to visit face-to-face with friends and family—over Wi-Fi or cellular. In a FaceTime call, you can also watch TV shows and movies, listen to music, and even work out together.



## Set up FaceTime

To get started with FaceTime, go to the Settings app, tap Apps, then tap FaceTime. Make sure that you're signed in to your Apple Account and FaceTime is turned on. If more than one contact method appears below "You can be reached by FaceTime at," you can tap to select or deselect it.



## Make a FaceTime call

Open the FaceTime app, tap New Call, then enter the name, number, or Apple Account of the person (or people) you want to call. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or Phone to make an audio call. In a Group FaceTime call, you can talk with up to 32 people on a call. (FaceTime audio calls and Group FaceTime calls aren't available in all countries or regions.)

If you want to call someone who doesn't have an Apple device, you can create and send a link to the call in Messages or Mail. Open FaceTime, tap New Call, then tap .



**FPO**

## Use the FaceTime controls

While on a FaceTime call, use the FaceTime controls to turn your speaker, camera, or mic on or off, take a Live Photo, and more. If you don't see the controls, tap your screen.



**FPO**

## Switch a FaceTime call to another device

When you're signed in to your Apple Account on multiple devices, you can start a FaceTime call on one of them, then move it to your iPhone. You can also move your call from your iPhone to another device. On the device you want to switch to, tap  or  at the top of the screen or the suggestion "Move call to this [device]." Tap Switch, then tap Switch to confirm.



## Leave a video message

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime video call, you can leave a video message. Tap Record Video, then record your message. When you're finished recording, tap , then tap .

Want to learn more?

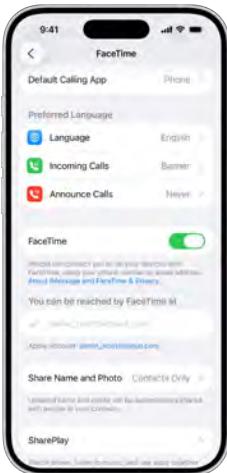
- [Set up FaceTime](#)
- [Make FaceTime calls](#)
- [While on a FaceTime call](#)
- [Hand off a FaceTime call to another Apple device](#)
- [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together](#)
- [Change the FaceTime video settings](#)
- [Change the FaceTime video settings](#)

*Note:* Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

## Make and receive FaceTime calls

### Set up FaceTime calls on iPhone

To make and receive FaceTime calls on your iPhone, you need to be signed in to FaceTime with your [Apple Account](#).



1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap FaceTime.
3. If FaceTime is turned off, turn it on.
4. If you see a sign in screen, sign in with your Apple Account and password.

To stop making and receiving calls through FaceTime, go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone, tap Apps, then tap FaceTime. Turn off FaceTime (or tap your Apple Account, then tap Sign Out).

## Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

With an internet connection and an Apple Account, you can make and receive calls in the FaceTime app.

**Note:** You may need to [set up FaceTime](#) before you can make and receive calls.

You can also make FaceTime calls over a cellular data connection, which may incur additional charges. To turn this feature off, go to Settings, tap Cellular, then turn off FaceTime below Cellular Data. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

**Note:** FaceTime audio calls aren't available in all countries or regions.

### Make a FaceTime call

1. Go to the FaceTime app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call.
3. Enter the name, number, or Apple Account of the person you want to call. Alternatively, you can tap 📞 to open Contacts and add people from there, or tap a suggested contact.
4. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or 📞 to make an audio call.

**Tip:** In some countries and regions, you can record a one-to-one FaceTime audio call and view the call transcript in Notes. See [Record and transcribe an audio call](#).

To call multiple people, see [Make a Group FaceTime call](#). (Group FaceTime isn't available in all countries or regions.)

Say something like: "Call Eliza's mobile." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

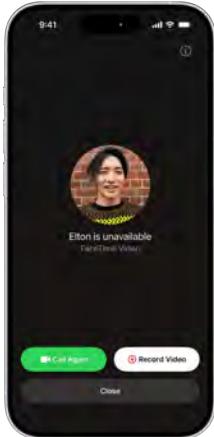
**Tip:** To see more during a FaceTime video call, rotate iPhone to use landscape orientation. See [Rotate your iPhone screen](#).

## Record a video message

Draft

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime video call, you can record a video message to convey exactly what you want to say.

1. Tap Record Video, wait for the countdown (from 5 to 1), then record your message.



2. Tap  to stop recording.
3. Tap  to send your recorded message, or tap Retake to rerecord the message. You can also tap Save to save the video message to Photos.

After you send your video message, the recipient is notified.



*Note:* You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

*Note:* You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

See [View a video message or listen to a voicemail](#).

## Leave a voicemail

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime audio call, and the person you're calling has Live Voicemail turned on in *Settings*  > Apps > Phone, you're prompted to leave a voicemail.

If you leave a voicemail, your message is transcribed on their screen as you speak, letting them know what you're calling about and giving them a chance to pick up your call.

Draft

# FPO

## Call again

To call someone again in FaceTime, do any of the following:

- Tap Call Again on the Record Video screen.
- In your call history, tap the name or number of the person (or group) you want to call again, then tap the Call or Video button.

## Start a FaceTime call from a Messages conversation

In an iMessage conversation, you can start a FaceTime call with the person you're chatting with.

1. Tap  at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap FaceTime Audio.
  - Tap FaceTime Video.

**Important:** If you remove the FaceTime app from your iPhone, or if you removed FaceTime in an earlier version of iOS, you won't be able to make or receive FaceTime calls or use SharePlay on your iPhone unless you [redownload the app](#). Cellular calls won't be relayed from your iPhone to your iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch until FaceTime is reinstalled. Settings and contact cards won't show FaceTime options. However, if your Apple Watch has its own SIM, it can still make calls through your service provider.

## Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

### Answer a FaceTime call

When a FaceTime call comes in, do any of the following:

- *Accept the call:* To answer a video call, tap , then tap . To answer an audio call, tap .
- If a slider appears, you can drag it right to answer.
- *Decline the call:* Tap Decline or .

For FaceTime video calls, tap Message to send a text message or tap Remind Me to set a reminder to call back. For FaceTime audio calls, tap Message to send a text message or tap Voicemail to send the caller to voicemail. (You may need to tap the incoming call banner to see these options.)

- *Put the current call on hold:* Tap Hold and Accept.

*Note:* This option is only available if you're on a FaceTime audio call and you receive another incoming FaceTime audio call. Otherwise, you can tap End & Accept to end the current call and answer the incoming call.

**Tip:** You can have Siri [announce incoming calls](#), which you can accept or decline using your voice.

## View a video message or listen to a voicemail

If you miss an incoming *video call* and the caller leaves a video message, you receive a notification about the video message. A thumbnail image from the video also appears in your FaceTime call history. You can tap the notification or image to view the video message.

**Note:** You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

If you miss an incoming *audio call*, the caller can leave a voicemail if you have Live Voicemail turned on in Settings  > Apps > Phone. You can see a real-time transcription of the voicemail and pick up the call as they're leaving the message. To stop the incoming voicemail without answering or blocking the call, tap Stop. See [Turn on Live Voicemail](#).

**Tip:** To quickly access all voicemails or video messages from a specific contact, tap their name in the call history, then tap the Voicemails button or the Videos button.



**Note:** Live Voicemail isn't available in all languages or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Delete a call from your call history

1. Go to the FaceTime app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the call in your call history, then tap Delete

**Tip:** To quickly access all video messages or voicemails from a specific contact, tap their name in the call history, then tap the Voicemails button or the Videos button.

## Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

In FaceTime, you can create a link to a FaceTime call and send the link to a friend or a group (using Mail or Messages). They can use the link to join or start a call.

1. Go to the FaceTime app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call, then tap Create Link .
3. Choose an option for sending the link (for example, Messages or Mail).

In Calendar, you can schedule a remote ~~Video~~ meeting by [inserting a FaceTime link as the location of the meeting](#).

**Note:** You can invite anyone to join you in a FaceTime call, even people who don't have an Apple device. They can join you in one-to-one and Group FaceTime calls from their browser—no login is necessary. (They need the latest version of either Chrome or Edge. Sending video requires H.264 video encoding support.)

## Record and transcribe an audio call in FaceTime on iPhone

In some countries and regions, you can record a FaceTime audio call when you're talking to one other person. In select regions and languages, you can view the transcript of the call in the Notes app. Check the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

**Note:** Call recording is not currently available in the European Union, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Egypt, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, Russia, Saudi Arabia, South Africa, Turkey, United Arab Emirates, and Yemen.

### Record a call

Before you begin, check the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#) to see if call recording is available in your language and region, and make sure the other call participant is willing to be recorded.

1. During a one-to-one audio call in the FaceTime app , tap , then tap Call Recording.

Both call participants hear an audio notice that the call is being recorded.

2. To stop recording, tap . (If  doesn't appear, tap , then tap Stop next to Call Recording.) Call recording also stops when you end the call.

Call recordings are automatically saved to a Call Recordings folder in the Notes app.

### Play a call recording

1. Go to the Notes app .
2. Select a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap .

If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can [view a summary of an audio recording in Notes](#).

### View a call transcript

In [select regions and languages](#), you can view the transcript of a recorded call in the Notes app. The transcript may not be available immediately—you may see a message that the transcription is in progress.

**Note:** Verify the accuracy of a transcription before relying on it. It might not be a perfect representation of the conversation.

1. Go to the Notes app .

## 2. Select a note in the Call Recordings Draft folder, then tap Transcript .

*Note:* Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see Transcript, your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

In the transcript, the speaker of each statement is identified.

## 3. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:

- *Play the audio from a specific point:* Select the text you want to hear.
- *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
- *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
- *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap , then choose Save Audio to Files or Delete.

*Note:* Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

- *View the waveform of the recording:* Tap .

If you have any iPhone 16 model, iPhone 15 Pro, or iPhone 15 Pro Max, you can [view a summary of an audio recording in Notes](#).

## Turn off Call Recording

Call Recording is turned on by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Recording, then turn off Call Recording.

## While on a FaceTime call on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app, you can take a FaceTime Live Photo. You can also turn on Live Captions to see the spoken conversation transcribed and displayed in real time.

On an iPhone with Apple Intelligence, you can turn on Live Translation to see the other person's words translated from their language to your preferred language and displayed on your screen as they speak.

During an audio call in the FaceTime app, you can turn on Hold Assist to notify you when a live agent is available.

## Take a Live Photo

When you're on a FaceTime video call, you can take a Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation (not available in all countries or regions). The camera captures what happens just before and after you take the photo, including the audio, so you can see and hear it later just the way it happened.

*Note:* Make sure FaceTime Live Photos is turned on in Settings  > Apps > FaceTime.

1. During a video call in the FaceTime app , tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).

- *During a call with one other person:* Tap .
- *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the tile of the person you want to take a picture of, then tap .

You both receive a notification that the photo was taken, and the Live Photo is saved in your Photos app.

## Turn on Live Captions

If you're having difficulty hearing the conversation, Live Captions can make it easier to follow along. Live Captions are available on iPhone 11 or later when the [primary language is set to English \(U.S.\) or English \(Canada\)](#).

**Important:** The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations. Live Captions uses additional battery.

1. During a video call in the FaceTime app , tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap , then tap Live Captions.

A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen and who's speaking.

To stop showing the conversation on the screen, tap the screen, tap , then tap Stop next to Live Captions.

## Turn on Live Translation

On an [iPhone with Apple Intelligence](#), you can view captions in your preferred language during a FaceTime call with someone who speaks a different language. See [Translate messages, calls, and conversations](#).

## Turn on Hold Assist

When you're placed on hold during a FaceTime audio call, you can use Hold Assist to notify you when a live agent is available so you don't have to stay on the line. See [Use Hold Assist](#).

# Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

While you're on a call using the FaceTime app , you can use other apps—for example, to look up information, write a note, or perform a calculation.

[Go to the Home Screen](#), then tap an app icon to open the app.

To return to the FaceTime screen, tap the green bar (or the FaceTime icon) at the top of the screen.

You can also share your screen with the other people in your FaceTime call while using another app. See [Share your screen in a FaceTime call](#).

# Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can talk with up to 32 participants in a Group FaceTime call (not available in all countries or regions).

1. Go to the FaceTime app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap New Call.
3. Type the names, numbers, or Apple Accounts of the people you want to call in the entry field at the top.

You can also tap  to open Contacts and add people from there. Or tap suggested contacts.
4. Tap FaceTime to make a video call or tap  to make a FaceTime audio call.

Each participant appears in a tile on the screen. When a participant speaks (verbally or by using sign language) or you tap the tile, that tile becomes highlighted or more prominent. Tiles that can't fit on the screen appear in a row at the bottom. To find a participant you don't see, swipe through the row. (The participant's initials may appear in the tile if an image isn't available.)

**Note:** To see participants' images arranged in a grid, see [View participants in a grid](#).

To prevent the tile of the person speaking or signing from becoming more prominent during a Group FaceTime call, go to Settings , tap Apps, tap FaceTime, then turn off Speaking below Automatic Prominence.

**Note:** Sign language detection requires a [supported model](#) for the presenter. In addition, both the presenter and participants need iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS 11, or later.

## Start a Group FaceTime call from a group Messages conversation

In a group iMessage conversation, you can start a Group FaceTime call with all the people you're chatting with in Messages.

1. Tap  at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap FaceTime Audio.
  - Tap FaceTime Video.

## Add another person to a call

Any participant can add another person at any time during a FaceTime call.

1. Do one of the following:
  - *During a one-on-one FaceTime call:* Tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap , then tap Add People.
  - *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Add People.
2. Type the name, number, or Apple Account of the person you want to add.  
(You can add multiple people.)

Or tap  to add someone from Contacts.
3. Tap Add People.

## Join a Group FaceTime call

When someone invites you to join a Group FaceTime call, you receive a notification of the incoming call—you can either join or decline. See [Answer a FaceTime call](#).

To leave a group call at any time, tap  in the FaceTime controls, or tap **Leave** while viewing the list of participants.

The call remains active if one or more participants remain.

## View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone

During a call with four or more people in the FaceTime app, you can view participants in same-size tiles, arranged in a grid. The speaker's tile is highlighted automatically, so it's easy to know who's talking. (Depending on your iPhone model, some tiles may appear blurred.)

*Note:* Group FaceTime isn't available in all countries or regions.



In a call in the FaceTime app , tap the Grid button at the bottom left of the screen (if the button isn't visible, tap the screen).

To turn the grid off, tap the button again.

## Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

With SharePlay in the FaceTime app, you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friends and family while on a FaceTime call. You can also play supported multiplayer games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call, and watch supported live sports events together.

*Note:* You can start SharePlay instantly by holding two iPhones together. (See [Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhones close together](#).)

SharePlay can also be used in other apps during a FaceTime call. To see which apps are supported, tap , tap SharePlay, then scroll through the apps.

Draft  
Note: Apple TV+ (includes Friday Night Baseball in some countries and regions), MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie, TV show, or live sports event together, every participant needs to have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the [minimum system requirements](#). SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies, TV shows, or live sports events across different countries or regions. FaceTime, Group FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

## Watch video together during a FaceTime call

You can watch movies and TV shows during a FaceTime call in sync with your friends and family. You can also watch supported live sports events.



1. Start a FaceTime call or a Group FaceTime call.
2. Tap ⓘ, tap SharePlay, then tap an app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app).

Alternatively, you can [go to the Home Screen](#), then open a video streaming app that supports SharePlay.

3. Select a show, movie, or live sports event that you want to watch.
4. Tap the Play button, then select SharePlay (if it appears) to begin watching with everyone on the call. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person watching the content can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward. (Settings like closed captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.)

You can use [Picture in Picture](#) to keep watching the video while using another app—order food, check your email, or jump into the Messages app to discuss the video by text when you don't want to interrupt the sound of the movie or TV show.

## Invite friends to watch video together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the [minimum system requirements](#), you can start a FaceTime call in the Apple TV app ⓘ (or other supported video app) while you're browsing or watching video content, and share the item in sync with others using SharePlay. Everyone on the call needs to have the same type of access to the Draft

content on their own device, through either a [Draft](#) subscription or purchase.

1. In the Apple TV app (or other supported video app), find a show, movie, or live sports event that you want to share.
2. Tap the item to see its details, tap , then tap .
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

To begin viewing, recipients tap Open.

**Note:** If the content requires a subscription, people who aren't subscribers can subscribe before watching.

After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

## Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

If you've already started [watching a video together](#) on iPhone, you can send it to Apple TV to enjoy on the big screen.

On iPhone, do one of the following:

- In the streaming app, tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.
- [Open Control Center](#), tap , then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.

The video plays in sync on Apple TV, and you can keep the conversation going on your iPhone.

See [Watch together using SharePlay](#) in the Apple TV User Guide.

## Listen to music together during a FaceTime call

You can get together and listen to an album or favorite playlist with others on a FaceTime call. Anyone on the call who has access to the music (for example, through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial) on a device that meets the [minimum system requirements](#) can listen along, see what's next, add songs to a shared queue, and more.



FPO

1. [Start a FaceTime call](#) or a [Group FaceTime call](#).

2. Tap , tap SharePlay, then tap a music streaming app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app).

Alternatively, you can [go to the Home Screen](#), then open a music streaming app that supports SharePlay (for example, the Music app).

3. Select the music you want to listen to, then tap the Play button to begin listening to the music together. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to hear the music.)

For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the music starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, scrub to a different part of the song, or go to the next track. And anyone on the call can add songs to the shared queue.

## Invite friends to listen to music together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the [minimum system requirements](#), you can start a FaceTime call in the Music app (or other supported music app) and use SharePlay to share the music in sync with others on the call. Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, or scrub to a different part of the song. And anyone using SharePlay can add songs to the shared queue. The people you want to share with must have access to the music (for example, through a subscription).

1. Go to the Music app  (or other supported music app), then tap the music you want to share.
2. Tap  then tap .
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start.

To begin listening, recipients tap the song title at the top of the FaceTime controls, then tap Open. The music starts playing at the same time for everyone on the call who has access to the content.

*Note:* People who don't have access to the content you share are asked to get access.

## Play games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call

You can play supported multiplayer games with friends in Game Center on a FaceTime call. You must first [set up and manage your Game Center profile](#) in Settings , add friends, then find and download a supported multiplayer game for Game Center in the App Store.

During a FaceTime call, open the game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Play together in the Apple Games app](#).

SharePlay lets you work out with others using Apple Fitness+. See the Apple Support article [Use SharePlay with Apple Fitness+ on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple TV](#).

You can also share your screen to show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation. See [Share your screen in a FaceTime call](#).

## Share your screen in a FaceTime call on

## iPhone

In the FaceTime app (on a device that meets the [minimum system requirements](#)), you can share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

**Note:** FaceTime, FaceTime audio, Group FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

### Share your screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap .
2. Tap Screen Sharing, then tap Share My Screen.

A countdown from 3 to 1 appears at the bottom of the screen before screen sharing begins.

**Tip:** During a one-to-one FaceTime call, a participant who is using an iPhone or iPad can tap, draw, or write on your screen to call your attention to a specific area. The circle, drawing, or writing disappears after a few seconds. If you need more help, you can also allow the other participant to [control your screen](#).

To stop sharing your screen, tap , then tap Stop next to Screen Sharing. Ending a FaceTime call also ends screen sharing.

### Ask someone to share their screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap .
2. Tap Screen Sharing, then tap Ask to Share Screen.

## Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call on iPhone

During a one-to-one FaceTime video or audio call, you can remotely control someone else's screen or allow a trusted person to remotely control yours. The person controlling the screen can help with an issue or demonstrate how to use an app.

**Note:** Before someone can remotely control your screen, they need to be saved in your contacts. To help protect your data and privacy, additional restrictions may apply to remote control requests.

### Request remote control

You can request control of an iPhone screen that's being shared with you.

**Note:** Both you and the other participant need iOS 18 or later.

1. Go to the FaceTime app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the window showing the shared screen, then tap .

If the other participant accepts your request, you can tap or swipe to interact with the shared screen. You can also use the onscreen keyboard within apps.

### Accept a remote control request

Draft  
A participant can request to remotely control your screen if they're using an iPhone or iPad with iOS 18, iPadOS 18, or later.

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap Allow.

**WARNING:** The person remotely controlling the screen can perform tasks on your iPhone such as opening and closing apps, changing settings, deleting items, or sending messages. Only approve remote control requests from people you trust.

The person remotely controlling the screen may be restricted from tasks such as changing your Apple Account or Face ID settings, making payments, or erasing your device. Your Face ID and Touch ID will be disabled during a remote control session.

You can still tap, swipe, or type while your screen is remotely controlled—your actions take priority over remote actions.

## Decline a remote control request

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap Don't Allow. Screen sharing continues, and the other participant can still tap, draw, or write on your screen to highlight important areas.

## Stop remote control

You can end remote control at any time. Do one of the following:

- *If you're allowing someone to control your screen:* Tap Stop at the bottom of the screen sharing window.
- *If you're controlling someone's screen:* Tap  at the bottom of the screen sharing window.

Ending a FaceTime call also ends remote control and screen sharing.

Remote control isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)

# Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

In a FaceTime call, you can collaborate on a shared document. You can initiate collaboration in a FaceTime call that's in progress, or you can initiate collaboration from the app where the document was created.

1. [Start a conversation](#) in the FaceTime app  with the people you want to collaborate with.
2. Open the app you want to use, then open a document.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Tap Collaborate in the notification that appears.
  - Tap , choose how to share the document (FaceTime, AirDrop, Mail, or Messages), then tap Collaborate.

4. Tap Start in the collaboration notification that appears at the top of your screen.

Participants get a notification that you've shared a document you want to collaborate on. When they tap Open in the notification, the document opens on their device.

Everyone who receives and opens the document can make changes and see changes made by others. When someone makes a change, a notification is sent to everyone who's collaborating on the document.

## Use video conferencing features on iPhone

During a video call in the FaceTime app or a third-party video conferencing app, you can use full-screen video effects and add reactions with hand gestures that fill the camera frame with 3D effects.

### Use video effects in a video call

1. During a video call on your iPhone in the FaceTime app , tap your tile.

During a video call on your iPhone in a third-party video conferencing app, [open Control Center](#).

2. Choose any of the following:

- *Center Stage*: On [NPI models], automatically keeps you (and anyone with you) in frame as you move around. Tap Camera Effects, then tap Center Stage.
- *Portrait*: Automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you. See [Blur the background with Portrait mode](#).
- *Studio Light*: Dims the background and illuminates your face.
- *Reactions*: Allows you to use hand gestures to add reactions. When Reactions is turned off in Control Center, you can't use hand gestures to add reactions, but you can add reactions in FaceTime by tapping the icons that appear when you touch and hold your tile in the call. See [Add reactions in a video call](#).



You can adjust the amount of blur for Portrait mode or the light intensity for Studio Light. [Open Control Center](#), then tap FaceTime (or the name of the third-party video conferencing app). Tap Portrait or Studio Light, then adjust the slider.

### Add reactions in a video call

With simple hand gestures in the FaceTime app (and third-party video conferencing apps), you can add reactions that fill the camera frame with fun, 3D augmented reality effects—including hearts, balloons, fireworks, and more. Hand gestures are available on an iPhone 12 or later.

**Note:** To use hand gestures during a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then make sure Reactions is turned on. To use hand gestures during a call in a third-party video conferencing app, [open Control Center](#), then make sure Reactions is turned on. When using gestures, hold your hands away from your face, and pause for a moment or two to activate the effect. (Only the front camera supports reactions and gestures.) You can also add reactions by touching and holding your tile in the call, then tapping the icons that appear.

Reaction	Gesture	Icon
Hearts		
Thumbs-up		
Thumbs-down		
Balloons		
Rain		
Confetti		
Laser burst		
Fireworks		

## Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

You can start a FaceTime call on your iPhone and move the call to another device where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

With Continuity Camera and Mic, you can also use iPhone as a webcam and microphone for FaceTime calls on your Mac or Apple TV. See [Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac](#) and [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K](#).

Draft  
Note: Your selected contact information for the call, shown in Settings > Apps > FaceTime, must match the selected contact information in FaceTime settings on the device you want to hand off to.

## Hand off a FaceTime call from iPhone to iPad or Mac

While on a FaceTime call on your iPhone, you can hand off the call to your iPad or Mac (iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, required). You must also be signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, do one of the following on the other device:
  - Tap the notification with the suggestion "Move call to this [device]."
  - Tap  or  at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Switch or Join, then tap Switch or Join to confirm.

The call moves to the new device. On the original device, a banner appears confirming that the call was continued elsewhere, along with a Switch button, which you can tap if you want to bring the call back.

## Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to Apple TV 4K

You can start (or receive) a FaceTime call on your iPhone, and then hand off the call to the larger screen on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later) when you're signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices. After you hand off the call, it continues on Apple TV, with your iPhone serving as a webcam and microphone for Apple TV for the duration of the call. Continuity Camera with Apple TV is available on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, or later, and on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

For instructions on handing off and continuing the call on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation), see [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#).

# Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

During a call in the FaceTime app, you can turn Portrait mode on or off, switch between cameras, or turn your camera on or off.

## Blur the background with Portrait mode

During a FaceTime call, Portrait mode automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you, the same way Portrait mode does in the Camera app.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap your tile.
2. Tap Portrait.

To turn Portrait mode off, tap the button again.

You can also turn on Portrait mode in Control Center. [Open Control Center](#), then tap FaceTime Controls.

## Switch to the rear camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then tap .

To switch back to the front camera, tap  again.

Note: While you're using the rear camera, you can adjust the image by tapping 1x. The label changes to show the current zoom (from 0.5x to 6x).

## Turn off your camera

Draft

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to make the controls appear, then tap  (Tap it again to turn the camera back on.)

Draft

## Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Spatial Audio in the FaceTime app  makes it sound like your friends are in the room with you. Their voices are spread out and sound like they're coming from the direction in which each person is positioned on the screen. You can adjust other audio settings during a FaceTime call.

*Note:* Spatial Audio also works with the following AirPods models: AirPods 3, AirPods Pro (all models), and AirPods Max.

FPO

### Filter out background sounds

When you want your voice to be heard clearly in a FaceTime call and other sounds filtered out, you can turn on Voice Isolation mode. Voice Isolation mode prioritizes your voice in a FaceTime call and blocks out the ambient noise.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, [open Control Center](#).
2. Tap FaceTime, then select Voice Isolation.

### Include the sounds around you

When you want your voice and all the sounds around you to be heard in a FaceTime call, you can turn on Wide Spectrum mode.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, [open Control Center](#).
2. Tap Mic Mode, then select Wide Spectrum.

### Mute the mic

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap  to turn off the sound.

Tap  to turn the mic back on.

When your sound is turned off, your mic detects whether you're speaking, and you're notified that your mic is muted and that you can tap  to unmute it.

## Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

During video calls in the FaceTime app, you can become your favorite Memoji (on an iPhone with Face ID).

Draft

In Messages on an iPhone with Face ID, you can create a Memoji character to use in your FaceTime calls. iPhone captures your movements, facial expressions, and voice, and conveys them through your character. (Your character imitates you even when you stick out your tongue!)

See [Create and send Memoji](#)

1. During a call in the FaceTime app on your iPhone, tap your tile.
2. Tap Memoji, then choose a Memoji (swipe through the characters at the bottom, then tap one).

The other caller hears what you say, but sees your Memoji doing the talking.

## Use a filter to change your appearance

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap your tile, then tap ⓘ(if available)).
2. Tap ⓘ to open the filters.
3. Choose your appearance by tapping a filter at the bottom (swipe left or right to preview them).

## Add a text label

1. During a call, tap the screen, then tap ⓘ.
2. Tap ⓘ, then tap a text label.

To see more label options, swipe up from the top of the text window.
3. While the label is selected, type the text you want to appear in the label, then tap away from it.
4. Drag the label where you want to place it.

To delete the label, tap it, then tap ✖.

## Add stickers

1. During a call, tap your tile, tap ⓘ, then do any of the following:
  - Tap ⓘ to add a Memoji sticker or ⓘ to add an Emoji sticker.
  - Tap ⓘ, swipe up, then tap ⓘ.
2. Tap a sticker to add it to the call.

To see more options, swipe left or swipe up.
3. Drag the sticker to place it where you want.

To delete the sticker, tap it, then tap ✖.

## Add shapes

1. During a call, tap your tile, then tap ⓘ.
2. Tap ⓘ, then tap a shape to add it to the call.

To see more options, swipe up from the top of the shapes window.
3. Drag the shape where you want to place it.

To delete the shape, tap it, then tap ✖.

# Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

You can leave a call in the FaceTime app at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

## Leave a FaceTime call

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap .

## Switch to a Messages conversation

During a call, you can jump to a Messages thread that includes everyone on the call.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app  on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap the contact information or people count at the top of the screen, then tap .

# Block FaceTime calls from unknown callers on iPhone

In the FaceTime app , you can block FaceTime calls from unknown callers and report the calls as spam or junk. You can also silence calls from unknown callers.

## Block a FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call, you can block the caller. Do one of the following:

- During a call, tap the email address or phone number, tap Block Caller, then tap Block. (You may need to tap the FaceTime window for the email address or phone number to appear.)
- In your FaceTime call history, tap the call, tap Block Contact, then tap Block.

## Block a Group FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted Group FaceTime call from unknown callers, you can block the call initiator (or all participants) by doing one of the following:

- *While the call is ringing:* Tap the left side of the notification to expand the window, tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Block All Participants.
- *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Block Unknown Participants or Block All Participants.
- *After a Group FaceTime call has ended:* Tap the call in the call history, then tap Block All Participants.

# Screen and filter FaceTime calls on iPhone

In the FaceTime app, you can screen calls from unsaved numbers to get more information from callers before the call comes through. You can also silence calls from unknown callers or calls identified as spam. Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap FaceTime.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Screen calls from unknown numbers:* Turn on Screen Incoming Calls. Callers whose numbers aren't saved are asked to provide more information before the incoming call rings.
  - *Silence calls from unknown numbers:* Turn on Move to Unknown Callers. Missed calls and voicemails from unsaved numbers are moved to the Unknown Callers list in your call history (tap  to see the list).
  - *Silence calls identified as spam:* Turn on FaceTime Spam. Spam calls are moved to the Spam list in your call history (tap  to see the list).

## Report a FaceTime call as spam on iPhone

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call or Group FaceTime call in the FaceTime app , you can report it as spam.

### Report a FaceTime call as spam

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call from an unknown caller, you can report the call to Apple as spam by doing any of the following:

- *During a FaceTime call:* Tap the email address or phone number at the top of the screen, tap Block Caller, then tap Block and Report Spam.
- *In your FaceTime call history:* Tap the call, tap Block Contact, then tap Block and Report Spam.

### Report a Group FaceTime call from unknown callers as spam

If you receive an unwanted Group FaceTime call from unknown callers, you can block them and report the call to Apple as spam. During the call, tap the people count at the top of the screen, then tap Report as Spam.

## Files

### Files basics

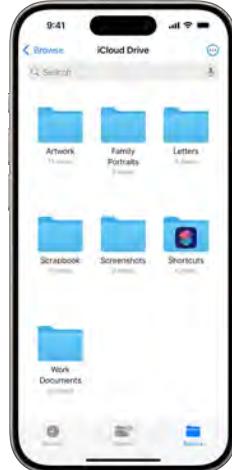
In the Files app, you can locate and view your files, organize and rearrange them in folders, compress, rename, and share them with friends, transfer them to and from iCloud Drive and other devices, and more. These basic tasks are summarized below.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.

- *View files downloaded from email or the internet:* Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap Downloads in the sidebar. See [Find downloaded files](#).
- *Browse your files:* Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap iCloud Drive. See [Browse files and folders](#).
- *View files you opened recently:* Tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
- *View shared files:* Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
- *Copy, move, share, or delete a file or folder:* Locate the file or folder, touch and hold it, then tap Copy, Move, Share, or Delete. See [Modify files and folders in Files](#).

## Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

You can copy, move, share, and delete your documents, images, and other files on your iPhone.



### Modify and rearrange documents

When viewing a file in a supported document format, you can modify and rearrange the document's contents.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the document you want, tap its title, then choose any of the following:
  - *Save to Photos:* Save the document in the Photos Library.
  - *Duplicate:* Make a copy of the document.
  - *Move:* Move the document to another location.
  - *Export:* Save a copy of the file in a different file format.
  - *Print:* Print the document

To rearrange a document, touch and hold a highlighted page and drag it to a new location.

To mark up a document, tap  at the bottom of the screen.

*Note:* Not all document formats are supported by the Files app.

## Customize the appearance of your Draft folders

You can add color and icons to your folders to make them easier to spot.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a folder you want to customize, then choose Customize Folder & Tags.

*Note: This command doesn't appear for the Desktop, Documents, or Downloads folders.*
3. Tap Tags, choose a color, then tap <.
4. Select an icon or tap Emoji to add an emoji to the folder.

To remove the icon from the folder, tap Clear below the icons.

## Change to list view or icon view



1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. From an open location or folder, tap , then tap Icons or List to change your view of the files.

## Rearrange the Browse screen

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. At the top of the Browse screen, tap , tap Edit, then do any of the following:
  - *Hide a location:* Turn the location off.
  - *Delete a tag and remove it from all items:* Tap  next to the tag. (See [Tag a file or folder](#).)
  - *Remove an item from the Favorites list:* Tap  next to the item. (See [Mark a folder as a favorite](#).)
  - *Change the order of an item:* Touch and hold , then drag it to a new position.

## Delete a file

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then locate the file you want to delete.
3. Touch and hold the file, then tap .

# Find files and folders in <sup>Draft</sup>Files on iPhone

In the Files app, you can search for and view your documents, images, and other files.

## Find downloaded files

If you downloaded files to your iPhone from the internet, you can find them in the Downloads folder.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the Downloads folder to see your downloaded files.

## Find a specific file or folder

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Enter a filename, folder name, or document type in the search field.

When you search, you have these options:

- *Focus the scope of your search:* Below the search field, tap Recents or the name of the location or tag.
- *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Search.
- *Start a new search:* Tap  in the search field.
- *Open a result:* Tap it.

## Choose a default app for opening a file

You can specify a default app to open a file with, so that the file always opens in that app when you tap it.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to open.
3. Choose Open With from the menu, then choose an option.

## Browse files and folders

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a document on the Browse screen.

If you don't see the Browse screen, tap Browse again.

3. To view recently opened files, tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
4. To open a file, location, or folder, tap it.

*Note:* If you haven't installed the app that created a file, a preview of the file opens in Quick Look.

For information about marking folders as favorites or adding tags, see [Tag a file or folder](#).

## Change how files and folders are sorted

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.

2. From an open location or folder, tap  Draft.
3. Choose an option: Name, Kind, Date, Size, or Tags.

## Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

In the Files app, you can organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

### Create a folder

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Tap , then tap New Folder.

*Note:* If you don't see New Folder, you can't create a folder in that location.

### Rename, compress, and make other changes to a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, then choose an option: Copy, Move, Rename, Compress, Duplicate, or Delete.

To modify multiple files or folders at the same time, tap , tap Select, tap to select the files or folders you want to modify, then tap an option at the bottom of the screen (for example, Share, Move, or Delete).

*Note:* Some options may not be available, depending on the item you select; for example, you can't delete or move an app library (a folder labeled with the app name).

### Zip or unzip a file or folder

You can zip a file or folder to compress it so that it takes up less storage space on your iPhone. You can also unzip a compressed file or folder.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file or folder you want to zip, then tap Compress.

To unzip a compressed file or folder, touch and hold it, then tap Uncompress.

### Tag a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, tap Tags, then tap one or more tags.
4. Tap Done.

To find tagged items, tap Browse, then tap an item below Tags.

To remove a tag, tap it again.

### Mark a folder as a favorite

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a location, touch and hold the folder, then tap Favorite.

# Send files from the Files app on iPhone

You can send a copy of any file to others. If you have a document you want to send that isn't digitized, you can scan it with the Files app first.

## Send a file

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to send, then tap Share.  
**Tip:** To send a smaller version of the file, tap Compress before you tap Share, touch and hold the compressed version of the file (identified as a zip file), then tap Share.
3. Choose an option for sending (for example, AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), then tap Send.

## Reply to a received document

If you save an attachment from the Mail app, you can quickly reply to the email and optionally return the attachment.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to reply to, then tap "Reply to."

## Scan a document

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the location or folder where the document you want to scan is located.
3. Tap  at the top of the screen, then tap Scan Documents.

**Tip:** If the files or folders you want to share are stored in iCloud Drive, you can [invite others to view or edit](#) their contents—you don't need to send them copies.

# Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

You can access iCloud Drive and store files, create folders, and share documents with friends and family. You can access your content from all your devices where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#)—including on a Mac, where iCloud Drive is located in the Finder.

iCloud Drive is built into the Files app on devices with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later. You can also use iCloud Drive on Mac computers (OS X 10.10 or later), Windows devices (iCloud for Windows 7 or later), or online at [iCloud.com](#). Storage limits depend on your iCloud storage plan.

## Turn on iCloud Drive

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap Drive, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

## Browse iCloud Drive

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap **Browse** at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap **iCloud Drive** below Locations.  
If you don't see Locations, tap **Browse** again. If you don't see **iCloud Drive** below Locations, tap **Locations**.
4. To open a folder, tap it.

See [Modify files, folders, and find downloads](#).

## Choose which apps use iCloud Drive

You can choose which apps have access to store and edit content on iCloud Drive.

1. Go to **Settings**  > **[your name]** > **iCloud**.
2. Tap **See All** next to **Saved to iCloud**.
3. Turn on each app you want saved to iCloud, and turn off each one you don't want saved.

# Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

After you [set up iCloud Drive](#), you can share folders and individual files with friends and colleagues. When you make changes to a shared folder or file, others see your changes automatically. If you allow people to make edits, their changes appear automatically as well.

Files and folders shared in iCloud Drive have these important characteristics:

- If you collaborate on a folder, all items added to that folder by you or other participants are automatically shared.
- The link to a shared file includes its name. If the name or content is confidential, be sure to ask recipients not to forward the link to anyone else.
- If you move a shared file to another folder or location, the link no longer works, and people lose access to the item.
- Depending on the app, users might need to reopen a file or tap the original link to see the latest changes.

## Share a folder or file

If you own a folder or file in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or collaborate on its contents.

You can share a folder or file so that only people you invite can open it, or anyone with the link can open it.

You can allow the contents of a folder or file to be changed, or you can restrict access so that the contents can only be viewed.

1. Go to the **Files** app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to a location, then touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
3. Tap , then choose whether you want to collaborate or send a copy of the folder or file.

- *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap , tap "Only invited people," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method—such as Messages or Mail—for sending people a link to the folder or file.
- *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap , tap "Only invited people," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
- *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap , tap "Anyone with the link," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
- *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap , tap "Anyone with the link," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
- *Allow anyone to invite more people:* Tap , turn on "Allow others to invite," then tap Done.

5. Choose how you want to send your invitation, then tap Send.

## Invite more people to collaborate on a folder or file

If you already shared a folder or file and its access is set to "Only invited people," you can share it with more people.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
5. Tap Share With More People, and choose a method for sending the link.
6. Enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

## Share a folder or file with more people using a link

If you set the access to a shared folder or file to "Anyone with the link," anyone with the link can share it with others.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap , tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Send Link.
5. Choose a method for sending the link, enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

## Change access and permission settings for everyone

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can change its access at any time. However, everyone you shared the link with is affected.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permissions you want to change.

4. Tap  then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Share Options.

5. Change either or both of the options.

- *Access option:* When you change the access option from "Anyone with the link" to "Only invited people," the original link no longer works for anyone, and only people who receive a new invitation from you can open the folder or file.

- *Permission option:* When you change the permission option, everyone who has the file open when you change the permission sees an alert. New settings take effect when the alert is dismissed.

## Change access and permission settings for one person

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file and its access is set to "Only invited people," you can change the permission for one person without affecting the permission of others. You can also remove the person's access.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permission you want to change.
3. Tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap the person's name, then select an option.

## Stop sharing a folder or file

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can stop sharing it.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the location of the folder or file you want to stop sharing.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file, tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap Stop Sharing.

Anyone who has the file open when you stop sharing it sees an alert. The item closes when the alert is dismissed, the file is removed from the person's iCloud Drive, and the link no longer works. If you later share the item again and set the access to "Anyone with the link," the original link works. If the access is set to "Only invited people," the original link works again only for people you reinvite to share the item.

# Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

With iPhone and a computer, you can transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service like iCloud, Box, or Dropbox.

## Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPhone or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

To connect to iPhone, you might need a cable adapter. See [Connect external storage devices](#).

**Note:** If an alert appears on iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See [Organize files and folders](#).
3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.
4. Copy the files to the connected device. See [Connect and use other storage devices with Mac](#) in the Mac User Guide.

## Access an external storage device

You can rename, erase, and get information about a connected external storage device.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the name of the storage device below Locations, then do any of the following:
  - *Rename the storage device:* Tap Rename [device].
  - *Erase the storage device:* Tap Erase.
  - *Get information about the storage device:* Tap Get Info.

## Change the formatting of an external storage device

You can use the Files app to quickly change an external drive to APFS (Apple File System), ExFAT, or MS-DOS (FAT) file formats on iPhone models that have a USB-C port.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the name of the storage device below Locations, then tap Erase.
4. Select a format for the device—for example, APFS, ExFAT, or MS-DOS (FAT) — then tap Erase again.

## Connect to a computer or file server

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap  at the top of the screen.
4. Tap Connect to Server.
5. Enter a local hostname or a network address, then tap Connect.

**Tip:** After you connect to a computer or file server, it appears in the Recent Servers list on the Connect to Server screen. To connect to a recent server, tap its name.

6. Select how you want to connect: Draft
  - *Guest*: You can connect as a Guest user if the shared computer permits guest access.
  - *Registered User*: If you select Registered User, enter your user name and password.

7. Tap Next, then select the server volume or shared folder in the Browse sidebar (below Shared).

To disconnect from the file server, tap  next to the server in the Browse sidebar.

For information on how to set up your Mac to share files, see [Set up file sharing on Mac](#) in the Mac User Guide.

## Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

*Note*: Subscription fees might apply.

1. On your iPhone or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.
2. To access your shared files on iPhone, go to the Files app , tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

## Keep selected files downloaded

You can keep files downloaded that you always want to be able to access on your iPhone. If you make changes to these files while offline, your changes will sync with iCloud when you are back online.

1. Go to the Files app  on your iPhone.
2. Locate a file you want to keep downloaded.
3. Touch and hold the file you want to keep downloaded, then tap Keep Downloaded in the menu that opens.

If Keep Downloaded doesn't appear in the menu, the file is already on your iPhone.

# Find My

## Find people

## Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Before you can use the Find My app to share your location with friends, you need to set up location sharing.

*Note*: If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure Location Services is on in Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My. See [Control the location information you share](#).

### Set up location sharing

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.  
Draft

2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Share My Location. Draft

The device sharing your location appears next to From.

3. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, you can tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

**Note:** To share your location from another device, open Find My on the device and change your location to that device. If you share your location from an iPhone that's paired with Apple Watch (GPS + Cellular models), your location is shared from your Apple Watch when you're out of range of your iPhone and Apple Watch is on your wrist.

You can also change your location sharing settings in Settings  > [your name] > Find My.

## Set a label for your location

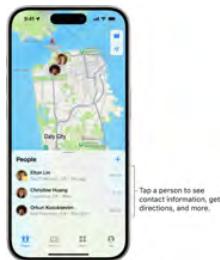
You can set a label for your current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). When you tap Me, you see the label in addition to your location.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then tap Location.
3. Select a label.

To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

## Share your location with a friend

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, tap , then choose Share My Location.



3. In the To field, type the name of a friend you want to share your location with (or tap  and select a contact).
4. Tap Send and choose how long you want to share your location.

You can also [notify a friend or family member when your location changes](#).

If you're a member of a Family Sharing group, see [Share your location with family members](#).

## Stop sharing your location

You can stop sharing your location with a specific friend or hide your location from everyone.

- *Stop sharing with a friend:* Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you don't want to share your location with. Tap Stop Sharing My Location, then tap Stop Sharing Location.
- *Hide your location from everyone:* Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Share My Location.

## Respond to a location sharing request Draft

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Share below the name of the friend who sent the request and choose how long you want to share your location.

If you don't want to share your location, tap Cancel.

## Stop receiving new location sharing requests

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Allow Friend Requests.

## Use Precision Finding on iPhone to meet up with a friend

Use the Find My app on [iPhone models that support Precision Finding](#) to meet up with a friend.

*Note:* Precision Finding isn't available in all countries or regions, and both you and the friend you're looking for must have [a supported iPhone model](#).

To use another iPhone model to find someone, see [Locate a friend](#).

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the friend you want to meet.

If you aren't following each other, you may have to [share your location](#) or [ask for their location](#).

3. Do one of the following:
  - *See your friend in Maps:* If you aren't nearby, tap Directions to get closer to their location.
  - *Find your friend nearby:* If you're near one another, tap Find to notify your friend that you're trying to locate them, then follow the onscreen instructions to get directions to them.

When you get close enough to each other, an arrow points in their direction with an estimate of how far away they are.



When you're walking in the right direction, the screen turns green.  
Draft

4. When you locate the person you're looking for, tap  Draft.



If you receive a notification that a friend is trying to find you, you can tap Share so they can find their way to you more easily. If you've already shared your location with them, they see where you are relative to their location. You can [stop sharing your location](#) at any time.

## Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

On iPhone 14 or later with iOS 16.1 or later, you can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

*Note:* Sharing your location via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Emergency SOS via satellite availability](#).

### Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

Most Find My features are only available if you're connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with friends via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Set the iPhone you're bringing with you as the iPhone that shares your location. On your iPhone 14 or later open the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then make sure Share My Location is turned on. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.
- Add the contacts you want to share your location with. See [Share your location in Find My](#).

### Send your location via satellite

You can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite if you're not connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with a friend via satellite, you must already be sharing your location with that friend in Find My. See [Share your location in Find My](#).

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.
3. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

4. Tap Send My Location (below My Location via Satellite), then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you need to turn left or right to connect to a satellite, your iPhone provides guidance—just follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* It may take a few minutes to send your location via satellite; continue to follow the onscreen instructions until the message is sent.

You can send your location once every 15 minutes. When you send your location via satellite, you don't see your friend's location in the Find My app.

## See a friend's location sent via satellite

In order to see a friend's location sent via satellite, you need to have iOS 16.1 or later installed on your iPhone (you don't need iPhone 14 or later).

When a contact sends you their location via satellite, a satellite icon  appears next to their picture and Satellite Location appears in the text in the Find My app. Their most recent location is viewable for up to 7 days.

# Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, after you share your location with a friend, you can ask to see their location on a map.

## Ask to see a friend's location

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose location you want to see.  
  
If you don't see a person in the list, make sure you're [sharing your location](#) with them.
3. Tap Ask To Follow Location.

After your friend receives and accepts your request, you can see their location. See [Respond to a location sharing request](#).

*Note:* If you see your friend's name in the People list but can't see their location on the map, ask them to make sure they're sharing their location and that Location Services is on in Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My.

## Remove a friend

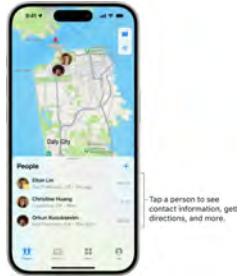
When you remove a friend, that person is removed from your People list and you're removed from theirs.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to remove.
3. Tap Remove [name], then tap Remove.

# Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

When a friend [shares their location](#) with you, you can use the Find My app to locate them on a map.

Draft  
Note: If you want to see how far away your friends are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See [Control the location information you share](#).



## See the location of a friend

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to locate.
  - *If your friend can be located:* They appear on a map so you can see where they are.
  - *If your friend can't be located:* You see "No location found" below their name.
  - *If you aren't following your friend:* You see "Can see your location" below their name. You can [ask to see a friend's location](#).

## Contact a friend

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to contact.
3. Tap Contact and choose how you want to contact your friend. See [Add and use contact information](#).

## Get directions to a friend

You can get directions to a friend's current location in the Maps app.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See [Get directions in Maps](#).

## Set a label for a friend's location

You can set a label for a friend's current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). The label appears below your friend's name when they're at that location.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to set a location label for.
3. Tap Edit Location Name, then select a label.

To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Favorite friends appear at the top of the People list and are marked by a star.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then find the person you want to mark as a favorite.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Tap the name of the person, then tap Add [name] to Favorites.
  - Swipe left across the person's name, then tap the star.

To remove a friend from your Favorites, swipe left and tap the star, or tap the friend, then tap Remove [name] from Favorites.

## Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to get a notification when your friend's location changes. You can get notified when a friend arrives at a location, leaves a location, or isn't at a location.

**Important:** In order to receive a notification when your friend's location changes, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings](#).

You can also let friends know when your location changes. See [Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My](#).

### Get notified when your friend arrives at or leaves a location

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Choose whether you want to be notified when a friend arrives at or leaves a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.

6. Choose whether you want to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

Your friend gets an alert after you set the notification.

If you set a recurring notification, your friend must approve it before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval when they arrive at or leave the location you chose for the first time.

### Get notified when your friend isn't at a location

**Draft**  
You can receive a notification if your friend or family member isn't at a specific location during a set schedule. For example, you can be notified if your child isn't at school during school hours.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Below When, tap [your friend's name] Is Not At.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.  
  
With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Select when you want to be notified.
  - *Time*: Select a start and end time.
  - *Days*: Select the days of the week.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

Your friend must approve the notification before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval on the time and day the notifications start.

### Change or turn off a notification you set

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose notification you want to change or turn off.  
  
This could be a notification you receive about a friend, or a notification your friend receives about you.
3. Below Notifications, tap the notification.
4. Do either of the following:
  - *Change a notification*: Change any details, then tap Done.
  - *Turn off a notification*: Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

You can create up to 25 Notify Me notifications.

*Note*: You can only create recurring notifications for friends who have [two-factor authentication](#) turned on.

## Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to let a friend know when your location changes.

You can also get a notification when your friend's location changes. See [Get notified when friends change their location](#).

### Notify a friend when your location changes

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to notify.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify [your friend's name].
4. Choose whether you want to notify your friend when you arrive at or leave a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

With a larger radius, your friend is notified when you're near the location instead of right at the location.

6. Choose whether you want your friend to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add.

You can stop notifying friends when your location changes at any time. See [Change or turn off a notification you set](#).

## See all notifications about you

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.

3. Select a name to see more details.

## Turn off notifications about you

You can turn off any location notification about you. This includes notifications you set and notifications your friends create.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.

3. Select a name, then tap a notification.
4. Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

# Find devices

## Add your iPhone to Find My

Before you can use the Find My app to locate a lost iPhone, you need to connect the device to your [Apple Account](#).

When you add your iPhone to Find My, you can also get notified if you leave it behind. See [Get notified if you leave a device behind](#).

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > [your name] > Find My.

If you're asked to sign in, enter your [Apple Account](#) information. If you don't have an Apple Account, tap "Don't have an Apple Account or forgot it?" then follow the instructions.

2. Tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone.
3. You can also turn on or off either of the following:

- *Find My network*: If your device is offline (not connected to Wi-Fi or cellular), Find My can locate it using the Find My network.

On a [supported iPhone](#), turning on the Find My network allows you to locate your iPhone for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, or up to 5 hours when it's in power reserve mode.

- *Send Last Location*: If your device's battery charge level becomes critically low, its location is sent to Apple automatically.

Your iPhone also includes a feature called Activation Lock that prevents anyone else from activating and using your device, even if it's completely erased. See the Apple Support article [Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

## Add another device

See any of the following:

- *iPad*: [Add your iPad to Find My](#) in the iPad User Guide
- *iPod touch*: [Add your iPod touch to Find My](#) in the iPod touch User Guide
- *Mac*: [Set up Find My on Mac](#) in the Find My User Guide for Mac
- *Apple Watch*: [Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide
- *AirPods*: Pairing instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the [AirPods User Guide](#) and [Turn on the Find My network for AirPods \(3rd generation\), AirPods Pro, and AirPods Max](#)
- *iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support*: [Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe](#)

You can also add AirTags and other items to Find My using your iPhone. See any of the following:

- [Add an AirTag](#)
- [Add a third-party item](#)

## Add a family member's device

You can see your family members' devices in Find My if you [set up Family Sharing first](#). Their devices appear below yours in the Devices list. See [Share locations with family and locate lost devices](#).

You can't add friends' devices to Find My. Friends who lose a device can go to [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) and sign in to their Apple Account.

# Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

If your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe has **Find My** support, you can connect it to your [Apple Account](#) so you can see its last known location in the Find My app. You can allow someone who finds it to see your contact information to help them return it to you.

When you add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My, you can get [notified if it detaches from your iPhone](#).

**Note:** iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support can be used with [compatible iPhone models](#).

## Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe when you first attach it to your iPhone

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#) on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap Continue on your iPhone screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe later

If you decide not to add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support when you first attach it to your iPhone, you can add it later from the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap +, choose Add MagSafe Accessory, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If the iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support is associated with someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See [Remove a device](#).

## Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for a device so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave your device without receiving an alert.

If you have an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can get an alert if it detaches from your iPhone.

**Important:** In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings](#).

## Set up alerts for your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or AirPods

You can set up separation alerts for your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later; Mac with Apple silicon and macOS 12 or later; or AirPods with the Find My network turned on.

You can only set up a separation alert from the [device sharing your location](#). You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the device you set an alert for.

1. Go to the Find My app on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to set up an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind, then follow the onscreen instructions.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

## Get notified when your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe detaches from your iPhone

You can get an alert one minute after your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support separates from your iPhone. Then you can use the Find My app to see its last known location on a map.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Detached.
4. Turn off or on Notify When Detached, then tap Done.

## Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app  to locate and play a sound on a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple Watch, AirPods, or Beats headphones ([supported models](#)). In order to locate a device, you must [turn on Find My \[device\]](#) before it's lost.

*Note:* If you want to see how far away your devices are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See [Control the location information you share](#).

If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate or play a sound on your device using [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#).



### About locating a device

- You can use Find My on your iPhone to see the location of your device on a map. If the device is online, you see its location, and it plays a sound to help you find it. If the device is offline, you see its location, but it doesn't play a sound.
- For AirPods and [supported Beats headphones](#), you can locate them when they're near your device and connected to Bluetooth®. For [supported AirPods](#), you can also see their location via the Find My network for up to 24 hours after they last connected to your device, even if they're not nearby.

- For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can see its location when it's attached to your iPhone and its last known location if it detaches from your iPhone.

## See the location of your device on a map

You can see your device's current or last known location in the Find My app.

Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to locate.

- *If the device can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is.
- *If the device can't be located:* You see "No location found" below the device's name. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification when it's located.

**Important:** Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings](#).

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article [If Find My is offline or not working](#).

## Play a sound on your device

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.

- *If the device is online:* A sound starts after a short delay and gradually increases in volume, then plays for about two minutes. If applicable, a Find My [device] alert appears on the device's screen.

A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple Account email address.

- *If the device is offline:* You see Sound Pending. The sound plays the next time the device connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. For AirPods and Beats headphones, you receive a notification the next time your device is in range of your iPhone or iPad.

If your AirPods are separated, you have additional options to play a sound. See [Locate AirPods in Find My](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Stop playing a sound on a device

If you find your device and want to turn off the sound before it stops automatically, do one of the following:

- *iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Press the power button or a volume button, or flip the Ring/Silent switch. If the device is locked, you can also unlock it, or swipe to dismiss the Find My [device] alert. If the device is unlocked, you can also tap OK in the Find My [device] alert.
- *Apple Watch:* Tap Dismiss in the Find My Watch alert, or press the Digital Crown or side button.
- *Mac:* Click OK in the Find My Mac alert.
- *AirPods or Beats headphones:* Tap Stop in Find My.

## Get directions to a device

You can get turn-by-turn directions to your device if you see its location on the map.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open the Maps app. See [Get directions](#).

If you're near your supported AirPods, you can tap Find for additional directions.

For more information, see [Locate AirPods in Find My](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Locate or play a sound on a friend's device

If your friend loses a device, they can locate it or play a sound on it by going to [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) and signing in to their Apple Account. To learn more, see [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

If you set up Family Sharing, you can use Find My to [locate a family member's missing device](#).

## Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to mark a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, Mac, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost. In order to mark a device as lost, you must [turn on Find My \[device\]](#) before it's lost.



### What happens when you mark a device as lost?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- You can create a message for the device that says it's lost and how to contact you.
- For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, your device doesn't display alerts or make noise when you receive messages or notifications, or if any alarms go off. Your device can still receive phone calls and FaceTime calls.
- For applicable devices, payment cards and other services are suspended.

## Mark a device as lost

If your device is lost or stolen, you can turn on Lost Mode (for your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe), or lock your Mac.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Activate.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions, Draft keeping the following in mind:

- *Passcode:* If your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch doesn't have a passcode, you're asked to create one now. For a Mac, you must create a numerical passcode, even if you already have a password set up on your Mac. This passcode is distinct from your password and is only used when you mark your device as lost.
- *Contact information:* For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, the contact information and message appear on the device's Lock Screen. For AirPods or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, the information appears when someone tries to connect with your device.

5. Tap Activate (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe) or Lock (for a Mac).

When the device has been marked as lost, you see Activated below the Mark As Lost section. If the device isn't connected to a network when you mark it as lost, you see Pending until the device goes online again.

See also [Mark AirPods as lost](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Change the information for a lost device

After you mark your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost, you can adjust the information in the Lost Mode message.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Pending or Activated.
4. Update the information, then tap Done.

## Turn off Lost Mode for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

When you find your lost device, you can turn off Lost Mode.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device.
3. Tap Pending or Activated below Mark As Lost, tap Turn Off Mark As Lost, then tap Turn Off.

For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, you can also turn off Lost Mode by entering your passcode on the device. For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, you can turn off Lost Mode by attaching the wallet to your iPhone.

## Unlock a Mac

When you find your lost Mac, do one of the following:

- *Mac with Apple silicon:* Enter your Apple Account password.

See the Apple Support articles [If you forgot your Apple Account primary email address or phone number](#) and [If you forgot your Apple Account password](#).

- *Intel-based Mac:* Enter the numeric passcode on the Mac to unlock it (the one you set up when you marked your Mac as lost).

If you forget your passcode, you can recover it using [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#).  
For more information, see [Use Lost Mode in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the  
iCloud User Guide.

If you lose your iPhone, you can turn on Lost Mode using [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#).

## Erase a device in Find My on iPhone

Use the Find My app to erase an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac. In order to remotely erase a device, you must [turn on Find My \[device\]](#) before it's lost.

### What happens when you erase a device in Find My?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- When you erase a device remotely using Find My, Activation Lock remains on to protect it. Your [Apple Account](#) password is required to reactivate it.
- If you erase a device that had iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later installed, you can use Find My to locate or play a sound on the device. Otherwise, you won't be able to locate or play a sound on it. You may still be able to locate your Mac or Apple Watch if it's near a previously used Wi-Fi network.

### Erase a device

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to erase.
3. Tap Erase This Device, then tap Continue.  
If the device is a Mac, enter a passcode to lock it (you need to use the passcode to unlock it).
4. If the device is lost and you're asked to enter a phone number or message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.
5. Tap Erase.
6. Enter your [Apple Account](#) password, then tap Erase again.

If your device is offline, you see Erase Pending. The remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

### Cancel an erase

If you erase an offline device and find it before it comes online again, you can cancel the erase request.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device whose erase you want to cancel.
3. Tap Cancel Erase, then enter your [Apple Account](#) password.

If you lose your iPhone, you can erase it using [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#).

## Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Draft

Draft  
You can use the Find My app to remove a device from your Devices list or turn off Activation Lock on a device you already sold or gave away. When you remove Activation Lock, someone else can activate the device and connect it to their Apple Account.

If you still have the device, you can turn off Activation Lock and remove the device from your account by turning off the Find My [device] setting on the device.

## Remove a device from your Devices list

If you're not planning on using a device, you can remove it from your Devices list. The device may need to be offline in order for you to remove it.

The device appears in your Devices list the next time it comes online if it still has Activation Lock turned on (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch), or is paired with your iOS or iPadOS device (for AirPods or Beats headphones).

1. Do one of the following:
  - For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch: Turn off the device.
  - For AirPods: Put AirPods in their case and close the lid or turn the AirPods off.
  - For Beats headphones: Turn off the headphones.
2. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the offline device.
4. Tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

## Remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

You can remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support from your Devices list if you don't want it to appear in the Find My app. Removing it from Find My allows someone else to connect it to their Apple Account.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
3. Tap Remove This Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Turn off Activation Lock on a device you have

Before you sell, give away, or trade in a device, you should remove Activation Lock so the device is no longer associated with your [Apple Account](#).

See the Apple Support articles:

- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#) and [Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#)
- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Mac](#) and [Activation Lock for Mac](#)
- [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Apple Watch, or buy one from someone else](#) and [About Activation Lock on your Apple Watch](#)

## Turn off Activation Lock on a device you no longer have

If you sold or gave away your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch and you forgot to turn off Find My [device], Draft you can still remove Activation Lock using

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to remove.
3. [Erase the device](#).

Because the device isn't lost, don't enter a phone number or message.

If the device is offline, the remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. You receive an email when the device is erased.

4. When the device is erased, tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

All your content is erased, Activation Lock is turned off, and someone else can now activate the device.

You can also remove a device online using iCloud.com. For instructions, see [Remove a device from Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

## Find items

### Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

You can register an AirTag to your [Apple Account](#) using your iPhone. When you attach it to an everyday item, like a keychain or a backpack, you can use the Find My app to locate it if it's lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your AirTag behind. See [Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind](#).

You can also [share an AirTag](#) with other users.

You can also add supported third-party products to Find My. See [Add or update a third-party item](#).

#### Add an AirTag

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#) on your iPhone.
2. Remove the battery tab from the AirTag (if applicable), then hold it near your iPhone.
3. Tap Connect on the screen of your iPhone.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

You can also register an AirTag in the Find My app. Tap , then choose Add AirTag.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See [Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My](#).

#### Change the name or emoji of an AirTag

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag whose name or emoji you want to change.

3. Tap Rename Item. Draft
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

## View more details about an AirTag

When you register an AirTag to your Apple Account, you can view more details about it in the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag you want to see more details about.
3. Tap the name of the AirTag to see the serial number and the firmware version.

If the battery level is low, a message appears below the location of the AirTag. You can also see a low battery indicator next to the name of the AirTag in the Items list.

## Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

If you want to share an item that's [paired with an AirTag](#) (or a third-party item that works with Find My), you can share it in Find My so the borrower can [see it on a map and find it](#). If it's nearby, Find My can [play a sound](#), and if you're using a [supported iPhone](#), you can [find its precise location](#). People you're sharing items with don't receive [tracking notifications](#) when the items are moving with them.

You can share an AirTag or other item with up to five borrowers in addition to yourself, for a total of six users per item, as long as the following requirements are met:

- Two-factor authentication must be turned on for your Apple Account.
- The person you share with must have an Apple Account and be signed in to it. They must also use iCloud. You can't share with a [child account](#).
- The owner and borrowers must have iCloud Keychain turned on.
- The owner and borrowers must be using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later.

*Note:* You share a third-party item the same way you share an AirTag.

### Share an AirTag

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the name of the AirTag or item you want to share, then tap Add Person below Share This AirTag (or Share This Item).
3. Enter the Apple Account information of the person you want to add.  
To add more people, tap .
4. Tap the name of the person you want to share with, then tap their Apple Account.

Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each person you want to add.

5. When you're finished adding borrowers, tap Share in the top-right corner. Draft

A list of everyone you invited appears on the item's main screen, along with the status of their invitations.

When someone accepts an invitation, the shared AirTag appears in Find My below Items and the recipient is notified that an item is being shared with them. If someone declines the invitation, their name is removed from the list, and you no longer see it.

## Ask the owner of an AirTag to share it in Find My

If the owner of an AirTag shares it with you but doesn't do so in Find My, you'll receive an unknown AirTag notification and tracking notifications. To stop receiving tracking notifications for the AirTag, ask the owner to share it with you in Find My.

**Note:** You can only ask an owner to share an AirTag if you're in the same Family Sharing group. See [Add a member to a Family Sharing group](#).

1. In the tracking notification you receive, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.

2. Tap Ask Owner.

If the owner wants to add you as a borrower, you receive an invitation to share the AirTag.

## Accept or decline an invitation to share

If you're invited to share an AirTag, you receive a notification.

To see the invitation in Find My, tap Items, then do one of the following:

- *Accept the invitation:* Tap Add.

The AirTag appears in your Items list, below [Sharer]'s Items. You stop receiving tracking notifications for as long as you borrow the AirTag.

- *Decline the invitation:* Tap Don't Add.

## Stop sharing an AirTag

If you're the owner of an AirTag and no longer want to share it, you can stop sharing in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the name of the item you're sharing, then tap the name of the person you're sharing it with.
3. Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing again.

The person you were sharing with no longer sees the AirTag's location, but may still get tracking notifications when the AirTag is moving with them.

## Share location of a lost item in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app on your iPhone, you can create a temporary webpage to share the location of a lost AirTag or other item. For example, you can share the webpage with an airline to help them track your mishandled bag.

If you want to share an item with a contact, see [Share an AirTag](#).

**Note:** You can't share the location of an item if it's within proximity of the device sharing your location.

## Create and share a webpage for location updates Draft

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item that you want to share location updates for, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to create and share a temporary webpage.

**Note:** To provide updated locations, at least one of your Apple devices where you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#) needs to be online.

4. Tap Done.

## View and manage the shared item location

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item with the shared webpage, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Copy the URL:* Tap the field at the top.
  - *View the details:* View the Visited By and Expiration rows.
  - *Share the webpage with additional people:* Tap Share Location Link, then choose a sharing option (such as AirDrop or Mail).

## Stop sharing location updates

Sharing stops when you reunite with the item, after 7 days, or when you end it manually.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the item with the shared webpage, then tap Share Item Location.
3. Tap Stop Sharing Item Location.

## Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

You can use certain third-party products with the Find My app . You can pair these products with your [Apple Account](#) using your iPhone, and then use Find My to locate them if they're lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your item behind. See [Get notified if you leave an item behind](#).

You can also add an AirTag to Find My. See [Add an AirTag](#).

### Add a third-party item

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make the item discoverable.
3. Tap , then choose Add Other Item.
4. Tap Connect, type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item Draft to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

If you have trouble adding an item, contact the manufacturer to see if Find My is supported. Draft

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See [Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My](#).

## Change an item's name or emoji

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item whose name or emoji you want to change.
3. Tap Rename Item.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

## Keep your item up to date

Keep your item up to date so you can use all the features in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to update.
3. Tap Update Available, then follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* If you don't see Update Available, your item is up to date.

While the item is updating, you can't use Find My features.

## View details about an item

When you register an item to your Apple Account, you can use Find My to see more details about it, like the serial number or model. You can also see if a third-party app is available from the manufacturer.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want more details about.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *View details:* Tap Show Details.
  - *Get or open third-party app:* If an app is available, you see the app icon. Tap Get or  to download the app. If you've already downloaded it, tap Open to open it on your iPhone.

## Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for an AirTag or other item so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You receive an alert every time the [device sharing your location](#) separates from the item.

You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave an item without receiving an alert.

**Important:** In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings](#).

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item you want to set an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

## Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to locate a missing AirTag or third-party item that you've registered to your Apple Account. If you have an iPhone 15 or later model, you can also find their exact location.

Learn how to register an [AirTag](#) or [third-party item](#).

### See the location of an item

Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to locate.

- *If the item can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is. The location and timestamp appear below the item's name. The item's location is updated when it connects to the Find My network.
- *If the item can't be located:* You see where and when it was last located. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located again.

**Important:** Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings](#).

### Play a sound

If the item is nearby, you can play a sound on it to help you find it.

**Note:** If you can't play a sound on an item, you won't see the Play Sound button.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.

To stop playing the sound before it ends automatically, tap Stop Sound.

### Get directions to an item

You can get directions to an item's current or last known location in the Maps app.

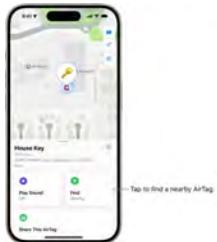
1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to get directions to.

See [Get directions](#).

## Find the precise location of an AirTag

If you have a [supported iPhone](#) and are near your AirTag, you can find the precise location of the AirTag.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the nearby AirTag.
3. Tap Find.



4. Do any of the following:
  - *Move closer to the AirTag:* Start moving around to locate the AirTag and follow the onscreen instructions. You may see an arrow pointing in the direction of the AirTag, an approximate distance telling you how far away it is, and a note if it's located on a different floor.
  - *Play a sound:* Tap  to play a sound on the AirTag.
5. When you locate the AirTag, tap .

## Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

If you lose an AirTag or third-party item registered to your Apple Account, you can use the Find My app to mark it as lost.

Learn how to register an [AirTag](#) or [third-party item](#).

### What happens when you mark an item as lost?

- You can add a message saying that the item is lost and include your phone number or email address.
- If someone else finds your item, they can use a supported device to see a website with the Lost Mode message.

### Turn on Show Contact Info for a lost item

To Turn on Show Contact Info for a lost item, do the following:

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to enter a phone number where you can be reached. To enter an email address instead, tap "Use an email address."

**Important:** Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See [Change notification settings on iPhone](#).

5. Tap Done.

## Change the contact information in the Lost Mode message

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.
4. Edit the phone number or message, then tap Done.

## Turn off Show Contact Info for a lost item

When you find your lost item, turn off Show Contact Info.

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom-left side of the screen, then tap the name of the item.
3. Below Lost AirTag, tap Show Contact Info.
4. Tap Stop Showing Information.

## Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

You can use the Find My app to remove an AirTag or third-party item from your Apple Account so someone else can register it.

Learn how to register an [AirTag](#) or [third-party item](#).

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to remove.
3. Bring the item near your iPhone.

If the item isn't near your device, you can still remove it from your account. However, the item must be reset before anyone can register it to their Apple Account.

4. Tap Remove Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to reset an item. For an AirTag, see the Apple Support article [How to reset your AirTag](#).

## Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

You can change the map view or distance units that appear in the Find My app.

### Change the map view

The button at the top right of the map indicates if the current map is for exploring  or viewing from a satellite .

1. Go to the Find My app  on your iPhone.
2. To choose a different map, tap the button at the top right, then choose another map type.

You can also tap  to further customize the map.

3. Tap .

You can also tap 2D or 3D at the top right to change the view (not available in all locations).

**Tip:** If you don't see 2D or 3D, zoom in. You can also swipe up with two fingers to see the 3D view.

For information about how to interact with maps, see [Set your location and map view](#).

## Change distance units

You can change the default distance units in Settings . See [Change the language and region](#).

## Turn off Find My on iPhone

You can turn off Find My on your iPhone if you no longer want to share your location or view the location of your friends, devices, and items.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Find My.
2. Tap Find My iPhone, then tap to turn it off.
3. Enter your Apple Account password, then tap Turn Off.

## Fitness

## Get started with Fitness on iPhone

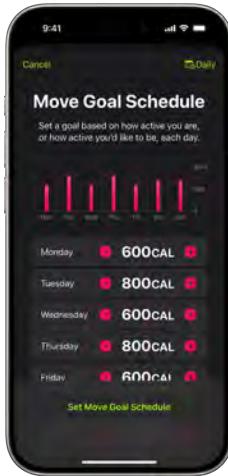
Use the Fitness app  on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. You can track your progress, view completed workouts, change your goals, and share your activity with others.

### See your summary



Open the Fitness app to see a summary of your Activity rings, the number of steps you've taken, distance traveled, trends, and more. You can also customize the Summary tab to include the metrics that you want to see. Tap Summary at the bottom of the screen, scroll down, then tap Edit Summary.

## Change your goals



You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. In the Summary tab, tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Change Goals.

## Start a workout

# FPO

You can start individual workout sessions—from cardio-focused activities such as High Intensity Interval Training (HIIT), Outdoor Run, and Outdoor Cycle, to strength-based workouts like Functional Strength Training, Core Training, and Kickboxing. Tap Workout, then tap  next to a workout type.



Tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend to share the progress you're making toward your fitness goals. You can view highlights of your friends' activity and get notifications when they meet their goals, finish workouts, and more.

Want to learn more?

- [See your activity summary](#)
- [Adjust your Activity ring goals](#)
- [Start a workout in Fitness](#)
- [Share your activity](#)

## See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

You can see a summary of your daily activity, trends, awards, and more, to keep track of your progress. You can also add, edit, move, and delete the metrics that appear in your summary.

On [supported models](#), say something like: "How far have I walked today?" or "How are my Activity Rings?" Not available in all languages or regions. [Learn how to use Siri](#).



Check your progress

Go to the Fitness app  at any time to see how you're doing. You can see your Activity rings, trends, completed workouts and meditations, awards, and more. Draft

When you carry your iPhone with you, motion sensors track your steps, distance, and flights climbed to estimate active calories burned. Any workouts you complete in compatible third-party apps also contribute to the progress shown on your Activity rings.

The red Move ring shows how many active calories you've burned. And if you have an Apple Watch, you'll also see a green Exercise ring (showing how many minutes of brisk activity you've done), and a blue Stand ring (showing how many times in the day you've stood and moved for at least 1 minute per hour).

An overlapping ring means you exceeded your goal. Tap the Activity rings to see details of your progress for that day.

**Note:** You can add a Fitness widget that lets you track your daily activity directly from your Home Screen or Lock Screen. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#) and [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

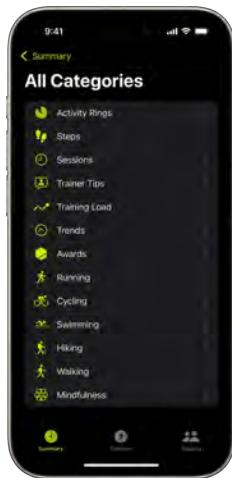
## See your summary

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then do any of the following:
  - *See your activity summary for a specific day:* Tap the Activity rings, tap , then tap a date.
  - *See your steps metrics:* Tap the Step Count or Step Distance area.
  - *Begin a recommended Apple Fitness+ workout or meditation:* If you [subscribe to Apple Fitness+](#), swipe left or right on the Fitness+ area to browse activities, then tap one.
  - *See your trends:* Tap the Trends area. To see the history of a specific trend, tap it.

Your last 90 days of activity are compared to the last 365. If the trend arrow for a particular metric points up, then you're maintaining or improving your fitness levels. If an arrow points down, your 90-day average for that metric has started to decline. To help motivate you to turn the trend around, you receive coaching—for example, "Walk an extra quarter mile a day."

*Note:* It takes 180 days of activity to start your trends.

- *See your workout and meditation history:* Tap the Sessions area, then tap an activity to learn more about its details.
- *See your awards:* Tap the Awards area, then tap an award to learn more about its details.



To view all categories of your summary, scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap See All Categories.

## Customize your summary

You can add, edit, move, and remove fitness metrics in the Summary tab, so you can see what's important to you.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, scroll down, then tap Edit Summary.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a metric:* Tap , scroll to find the metric you want, tap it, swipe through the different options, then tap Add Card.
  - *Edit a metric:* Tap a metric, swipe through the different options, then tap Swap Current Card.
  - *Move a metric:* Touch and hold a metric, then reposition it.
  - *Delete a metric:* Tap  next to a metric.
4. When you're finished, tap .

## Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

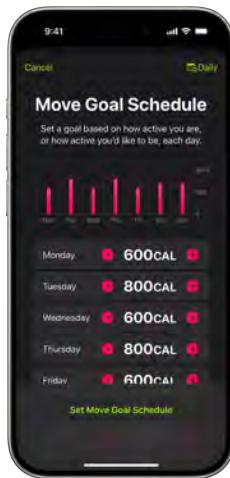
You can change your personal health details, change your Activity goals, and customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. You can also pause your Activity rings and resume at any time.

### Update your height and weight

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Details, tap Height or Weight, then make any changes.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

### Change your Activity ring goals

You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week.



1. Go to the Fitness app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, then tap ⓘ next to an Activity ring.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Adjust Goal for Today:* Set a temporary goal for your Activity ring for today.
  - *Change Daily Goal:* Set a goal based on how active you are, or how active you'd like to be, each day.
- Tip:** To customize your Activity ring goal by the day of the week, tap Change Daily Goal, then tap [ICON] in the top-right corner.
4. Tap ⓘ or ⓘ to adjust the goal.
5. When you're finished, tap Change [activity] Goal for Today, Change [activity] Goal, or Set [activity] Goal Schedule.

Every Monday, you're notified about the previous week's achievements, and you can adjust your goals for the upcoming week. Goals are suggested based on your performance in the previous week.

## Pause your rings

If you need to take a break, you can pause your Activity rings for up to 90 days without breaking your award streak, and resume at any time.



1. Go to the Fitness app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Pause Rings.

3. Tap a duration, or tap Custom to Draft set a custom duration.

To resume your rings, tap the Activity rings, then tap Resume Rings. To edit the duration of your pause, tap Edit Pause, set a custom duration, then tap Set.

## Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

You can sync a compatible third-party workout app to the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. Fitness suggests workout apps that you can download from the App Store.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, then scroll down to Add To Your Rings.

Note: You can also browse apps in the App Store. See [Get apps in the App Store](#).

3. Choose an app, then download it from the App Store.
4. Open the app and if prompted, grant permission to share data with the Health app.

Any workout you complete in a compatible third-party app appears in your activity summary and contributes to the progress toward closing your Move ring in the Fitness app.

To find out if a workout app you've downloaded is compatible with the Fitness and Health apps, see the Apple Support article [Manage Health data on your iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

## Workout

### Start a workout in Fitness on iPhone

You can start individual workout sessions. The Workout tab offers a variety of fitness options—from cardio-focused workouts such as High Intensity Interval Training (HIIT), Outdoor Run, and Outdoor Cycle, to strength-based workouts like Functional Strength Training, Core Training, and Kickboxing.

When you connect an Apple Watch, B788, Powerbeats Pro 2, or a compatible bluetooth-enabled third-party heart rate monitor, you can do a workout with workout metrics displayed on the screen.

#### Connect a heart rate device

Before you start a workout on your iPhone, make sure you've connected an Apple Watch, B788, Powerbeats Pro 2, or bluetooth-enabled third-party heart rate monitors that connect to the Health app. For more information on B788, see [Monitor your heart rate with B788](#).

If you do not have a heart rate device connected, do the following:

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, then tap  in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Bluetooth Settings, then [pair your iPhone with a Bluetooth accessory](#).  
Draft

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, then scroll to the workout type you want to do.  
To see workout types like Dance or Tennis, tap  at the bottom of the screen.
3. To start the workout, tap .

## Use the workout controls

During a workout, you can pause, mark a segment, [send a Check In](#), lock controls, and more. When you finish a workout, you can view a summary of how you did.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. [Start a workout](#), then do any of the following:
  - *Pause the workout:* Tap .
  - *Resume the workout:* Tap .
  - *Mark a segment:* Tap .
  - *Start a Check-In:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, tap Check-In, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *Lock the workout controls:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then tap Lock Controls.
  - *End the workout:* Swipe up from the bottom of the screen, then tap End Workout. Review the workout summary, then tap .

## Play audio during a workout in Fitness on iPhone

You can set media to automatically play when you begin a workout type—either media selected for you based on what you normally listen to, or media you choose yourself.

### Choose audio for a workout

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .
3. Turn on Autoplay Media.
4. To have media play automatically based on what you listen to and the type of workout, tap Picked for You.
5. To choose your own media, tap Choose Media, tap Add Media, then do one of the following:
  - *Choose a suggested option:* Tap an option below Suggestions.
  - **Tip:** To view more suggestions, tap Music or Podcasts below Sources.
  - *Choose a playlist:* Tap Music, tap Playlists, then choose a playlist.
6. When you're finished, tap .

*Note:* Music or other audio you're already listening to before you begin your workout continues to play.

# Log a completed workout Draft in Fitness on iPhone

You can log workouts you forgot to track. You can also delete workouts.

## Log a completed workout

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, then tap .
3. Tap Select, scroll to a workout type, then do any of the following to edit the details of your workout:
  - *Choose the duration of the workout:* Next to Duration, tap the time.
  - *Choose a start date and time:* Next to Start, tap the date and time.
  - *Enter an estimate of active calories:* Tap Active Calories, then choose an estimate.
  - *Rate your effort:* Tap Effort, move the slider to a number, then tap Update.
4. When you're finished, tap .

To learn more about the training load scale, see [Track your training load on Apple Watch](#).

## Delete a workout

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap Sessions.

*Note:* You may need to add the Sessions card to your activity summary. See [Customize your summary](#).
3. Swipe left on a workout, then tap Delete.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Delete the workout and health data:* Tap Delete Workout & Data.
  - *Delete the workout:* Tap Delete Workout Only.

# Customize a workout in Fitness on iPhone

You can create a custom workout on your iPhone to support your fitness goals. Add warmup and cooldown times; add work and recovery intervals; set time, calorie, and distance goals; and more.

## Create a custom workout

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .
3. Tap Custom, then tap .

4. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Add a warmup period:* Tap Warmup next to Goal Type, then tap Time, Distance, or Open.

You can also tap Target to add a heart rate alert to the warmup period.

- *Add work and recovery intervals:* Tap Add Step, tap Work or Recovery, then next to Goal Type, choose Time, Distance, or Open.

You can add multiple work and recovery intervals.

- *Add a cooldown period:* Tap Cooldown, then next to Goal Type, tap Time, Distance, or Open. When you choose Open, you can also add a heart rate alert.

- *Name the workout:* Tap New Custom Workout, then enter a name.

5. When you're finished, tap .

## Add a workout goal

You can set time, distance, and calorie goals for each workout type.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Workout, scroll to a workout type, then tap .

3. Tap Goals, then tap .

4. Do any of the following:

- *Set a time goal:* Tap Time, tap the time, then choose an option.
- *Set a distance goal:* Tap Distance, tap the number and unit of measure, then choose an option.
- *Set a calorie goal:* Tap Calories, tap the number, then choose an option.

5. When you're finished, tap .

To start a workout for a goal you set, tap  next to a goal.

## Change fitness notifications on iPhone

You can get notifications to help you reach your daily activity goals. You can turn off notifications you don't want to see.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Tap Notifications, then turn off the notifications you no longer want to see.

## Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

You can keep your fitness routine on track by sharing your activity with your family and friends—you can even share with a trainer or coach. You can view highlights and get notifications when others meet their goals, finish workouts, and earn achievements.

### Add or remove a friend

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone. Draft

2. Tap Sharing, tap , then tap Invite a Friend.

*Note:* If you're sharing for the first time, tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a friend from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, then tap the name.

You can also tap  to select contacts.

- *Add a friend's phone number:* Enter a phone number.

- *Add a friend's email address:* Enter an email address.

4. Tap Send.

If a friend hasn't accepted an invitation, tap their name in the Invited area of the Sharing screen, then tap Invite Again.

If you want to unsend an invitation you've sent, swipe left next to the friend's name, then tap Delete.

To remove a friend, tap a friend you're sharing with, tap , then tap Remove Friend.

## View your friends' activity



You can see highlights of your friends' activity—like workouts they've finished or goals they've met. You can also view your friends' activity rings for the last 7 days and a summary of activities they've completed.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do any of the following:
  - *View highlights:* Swipe left or right below Highlights to see how all of your friends are doing.
  - *Reply to a friend's activity:* Swipe left or right below Highlights, tap , then tap a reply, or tap Custom Reply to type a response.
  - *View a friend's activity:* Tap a friend's name below Activity Rings to see a summary of their activity rings for the last 7 days and recently completed activities like workouts and meditations.

## Change your friend settings

You can easily adjust friend settings.

1. Go to the Fitness app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap a friend. 

3. Tap  then do any of the following Draft:

- *View the friend's contact card:* Tap View Contact.
- *Mute notifications for the friend:* Tap Mute Notifications.
- *Hide your activity progress with a friend:* Tap Hide My Activity.
- *Stop sharing your activity with a friend:* Tap Remove Friend.

## Freeform

### Get started with Freeform on iPhone

The Freeform app  gives you a boundless canvas for creativity. Bring everything together on an online whiteboard, including photos, drawings, links, and files—and invite others to work with you. Brainstorm, sketch ideas, take notes, and collect your thoughts, either by yourself or with a group.

#### Gather ideas freely



You can put just about any kind of file in a Freeform board without worrying about layouts or page sizes. To create a board, tap  then tap  or another option near the bottom of the screen to start adding your ideas.

#### Collaborate with others



Draft

**Draft**  
Tap  to invite people to start working together in real time on a board. To conduct a brainstorming session or provide feedback, add a sticky note—tap , then tap Add Sticky Note.

Get creative with the drawing tools



Tap  to start drawing. Tap a tool to adjust the line's thickness, transparency, color, and more, and pinch to zoom in and out as you work.

Start on your iPhone, keep working on your iPad or Mac



The Freeform boards you store in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—stay up to date on all your Apple devices when you're signed in to the same Apple Account. To use iCloud with Freeform, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > See All (in the Saved to iCloud section), then turn on Freeform.

Want to learn more?

- [Create a Freeform board](#)
- [Share boards and collaborate](#)
- [Draw or handwrite](#)
- [iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices](#)
- [Add images, scans, links, and other files](#)
- [Add diagrams](#)

## Create a Freeform board on iPhone

You can use the Freeform app to create boards for brainstorming and collaborating. For example, propose a trip with friends and let everyone take part in the planning. You can add text, sticky notes, photos, videos, and other types of files. The canvas expands as you add content, so you're never constrained by space limits or page formatting.



## Create a new board

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ✎.
3. Tap one of the options at the bottom of the screen, such as 🖌 or 📸, to start building your board.



4. Move around your board by dragging your finger, and zoom in or out by pinching open or closed.

**Tip:** To magnify more precisely, tap ⌂, tap View Options, then tap a percent.

5. Your board is saved automatically as you work. To name it, tap ⌂, then tap Rename.

To learn how to align items or move something to the background, see [Position items on a Freeform board](#).

## Create a board from another app

You can start a new Freeform board using content from another supported app, such as Notes, Maps, Safari, Files, Photos, and more.

1. On your iPhone, go to the app whose content you want to use on a new Freeform board.
2. Open the item you want to place on the Freeform board (for example, a note, map, webpage, PDF, or screenshot).

To share just one part of a file to a board (rather than the entire webpage or note), select the item. If your selection includes text, only the text is shared.

3. Tap Share or 📱, then tap the Freeform app icon 📱.
4. Tap New Board or the name of an existing board.

Either a link or the item appears in the board.

## Open a board

Draft

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap the board you want to open, or do one of the following:
  - *If you're in a board:* Tap < in the top-left corner, then tap a board.
  - *Find a board you opened recently, share with others, or marked as a favorite:* Tap < in the top-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.

*Note:* Any collaborations you get invited to in the Messages app appear in an Invitations section on the Shared Boards screen until you accept them.

## Duplicate a board

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap ... at the top, then tap Select.  
If you're in a board, tap < to browse All Boards.
3. Tap the boards you want to copy, then tap Duplicate.

Or touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Duplicate.

*Note:* If you duplicate a shared board, the copy isn't shared. See [Send a copy of a board](#) to send someone a snapshot of the board, or [Invite others to collaborate on a board](#) to reshare the board.

## Add a board to Favorites

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Favorite ❤.
  - *If you're in a board:* Tap ..., then tap Favorite ❤.

## Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can edit and work with handwritten text just as you do with typed text.



Draft

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , then draw with your finger.

**Tip:** Hold your finger still for a moment when you finish the drawing to smooth or straighten its shape.

4. Tap a tool to switch to it. (Swipe to see other tools, such as Fill, Crayon, Fountain Pen, Reed Pen, or Watercolor Brush.)



Tap any tool a second time to change its qualities, like the angle, thickness, or opacity of a stroke.

To fill a closed shape with color, use the Fill tool (the paint tube).

To draw a straight line, tap the Ruler tool. (You can rotate it by placing two fingers on it and turning your hand.)

5. Tap  when you're finished drawing.

## Select and edit parts of a drawing

When you draw in the Freeform app, your strokes are grouped. If you want to break a drawing apart, you can separate your strokes and merge them. You can also delete, resize, or straighten parts of a drawing.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap  (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.
2. Tap or circle the part of the drawing you want to select, then choose an option. (Tap  to see other options.)

**Tip:** Choose Snap to Shape to smooth or straighten hand-drawn lines.

You can also tap to select an entire drawing or other item when you're not using the drawing tools. Tap an item to select it, tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap an option.

## Work with handwritten text

When you write by hand in the Freeform app, your handwriting is recognized as words. You can search text you handwrite in the same way you search typed text. You can also select it, copy and paste it as text, straighten it, or translate it. When you write something like a phone number or an address, you can tap it to open related apps like Phone or Maps.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap  (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.

2. To select text, tap, double-tap, or  the words, then do any of the following:

- *Make your writing more level:* Tap Straighten.
- *Correct spelling:* Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix appears in your own writing style.
- *Move handwritten text:* Touch and hold the selected text, then drag it to a new position.
- *Drag and drop:* Touch and hold the text.
- *Erase text:* Strike through the writing, then hold down your finger on iPhone. (Supported when using a markup tool such as Pen, Mono line, or Marker.)

To see other options, tap  in the menu that appears above the selected text.

When you tap a handwritten link, address, phone number, or date, it may open a menu or another related app.

## Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , tap Math Results, then choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter:
  - *If you want it to solve them:* Choose Insert Results. (The answer appears in writing that matches your own.)
  - *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. (A Solve button appears that, when tapped, adds the answer in writing that matches your own.)
4. Tap , then start writing a math equation.
5. Write an equal sign or draw a horizontal line below a stack of numbers, then do one of the following:
  - *In Insert Results mode:* Tap the answer to open the equation. You can tap  to delete the answer.
  - *In Suggest Results mode:* Tap Solve to add the answer in writing that matches your own.

You can decide which mode you want, or turn off math hints. See [Get math hints](#).

You can also type equations to be solved in any [text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes](#) and in the [Notes](#) app.

You can also use variables, edit equations, and update results as you can in the Calculator app. See [Solve math with Math Notes](#).

## Add text in sticky notes, shapes, and text boxes on a Freeform board on iPhone

Draft

Draft  
You can add text to a Freeform board using a sticky note or text box, or you can add text within a shape.



1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Add a text box:* Tap .
  - *Add text inside a shape:* Tap .
  - *Add a sticky note:* Tap , then tap Add Sticky Note.
4. Double-tap the text box, shape, or sticky note, then enter text. (If you have a keyboard connected, you can start typing as soon as the item appears.)
5. To change the font, alignment, and more, double-tap to show the object's formatting tools, then tap .
6. Tap  when you're finished.

## Add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add shapes, lines, and arrows to a Freeform board.

### Add and format shapes, lines, and arrows

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , and tap a shape, line, or arrow to add it to the board.

4. Tap to select the shape or line and **Draft** show its formatting tools, then do any of the following:

- *Change the fill color:* Tap ●.
- *Change the line style:* Tap ↕, then choose the stroke color and weight you want for a shape or line.

Tap ↗ to turn lines into arrows or to add other styles of endings.

If you've selected a connection line, tap ↘ to change its style to straight, corner, or curved.

- *Change the type of shape:* Tap ⋮ in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Change Shape, then choose another shape.

5. Tap ● when you're finished.

You can also add shapes and lines to your board by drawing them and then smoothing or straightening the strokes. See [Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board](#).

*Note:* The color of a button may change to reflect its current state.

## Split or combine shapes

When you add multipart shapes to a Freeform board, you can divide them into their parts and then edit each part individually. For example, you can divide the map of the United States (in the Places category) and change the color of each state. You can also subtract shapes from other shapes, remove the overlapping area between two shapes, or create a new shape by combining one shape with another.

After you've added shapes to your Freeform board, do one of the following:

- *Split a multipart shape apart:* Tap ⋮ in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Break Apart.
- *Combine shapes:* [Select multiple items](#), tap ☒, then below Combine Shapes tap an option to unite, intersect, subtract, or exclude.

## Change size, width, or length

After you add a shape or line to a Freeform board, you can change its dimensions or change how lines connect.

Tap to select a shape or line, then drag a dot.

- *Shapes:* Drag a blue dot to change the size or proportions of the shape. Drag any green dot to change aspects particular to that shape, such as its number of sides.
- *Connection lines:* Drag a blue dot to change an endpoint. Drag the green dot to adjust the curve. If it's part of a diagram, see [Change connection points](#).